Collaboration Endpoint software version 9.5
SEPTEMBER 2018

Administrator guide
for Cisco TelePresence MX700 and MX800
Thank you for choosing Cisco!

Your Cisco product has been designed to give you many years of safe, reliable operation.

This part of the product documentation is aimed at administrators working with the setup and configuration of the video system.

Our main objective with this Administrator guide is to address your goals and needs. Please let us know how well we succeeded!

May we recommend that you visit the Cisco web site regularly for updated versions of this guide.

The user documentation can be found on https://www.cisco.com/go/mx-docs

How to use this guide

The top menu bar and the entries in the Table of contents are all hyperlinks. You can click on them to go to the topic.

Table of contents

Introduction .................................................................................................................. 4
  User documentation and software ........................................................................ 5
  What’s new in CE9 ................................................................................................. 6
  MX700 and MX800 at a glance ............................................................................. 21
  Power On and Off ................................................................................................. 27
  LED indicators ....................................................................................................... 28
  How to administer the video system ..................................................................... 31

Configuration .......................................................................................................... 35
  User administration ............................................................................................... 36
  Change the system passphrase ............................................................................... 37
  Restrict the access to the Settings menu .............................................................. 38
  System configuration ............................................................................................. 39
  Add a sign in banner ............................................................................................ 40
  Add a welcome banner ......................................................................................... 41
  Manage the service certificates of the video system ............................................. 42
  Manage the list of trusted certificate authorities (CAs) ......................................... 43
  Set up secure audit logging ................................................................................ 44
  Manage pre-installed certificates for CUCM via Expressway provisioning ............ 45
  Delete CUCM trust lists ...................................................................................... 46
  Change the persistency mode .............................................................................. 47
  Set strong security mode ..................................................................................... 48
  Set up Intelligent Proximity for content sharing .................................................. 49
  Adjust the video quality to call rate ratio ............................................................. 54
  Add corporate branding to the screen and Touch 10 user interface ................. 56
  Add a custom wallpaper .................................................................................... 58
  Choose a ringtone and set the ringtone volume ................................................. 59
  Manage the Favorites list ................................................................................... 60
  Set up accessibility features ............................................................................... 61

Peripherals ............................................................................................................. 62
  Connect input sources ........................................................................................ 66
  Extend the number of input sources ................................................................... 68
  Set up the SpeakerTrack feature ......................................................................... 69
  Set up the Snap to Whiteboard feature ............................................................... 71
  Set up the PresenterTrack feature ....................................................................... 74
  Briefing room set-up ......................................................................................... 79
  Classroom set-up ............................................................................................... 85
  Test the loudspeaker connections ..................................................................... 90
Using extra loudspeakers and local reinforcement ................................................................. 92
Connect the Touch 10 controller ......................................................................................... 93
Connect the ISDN Link .......................................................................................................... 97

**Maintenance** .................................................................................................................. 98
Upgrade the system software .............................................................................................. 99
Add option keys .................................................................................................................. 101
System status ...................................................................................................................... 102
Run diagnostics .................................................................................................................... 103
Download log files ............................................................................................................. 104
Create a remote support user ............................................................................................. 105
Backup and restore configurations and custom elements ............................................... 106
CUCM provisioning of custom elements ............................................................................ 107
TMS provisioning of custom elements .............................................................................. 108
Revert to the previously used software image .................................................................. 109
Factory reset the video system .......................................................................................... 110
Factory reset Cisco Touch 10 .............................................................................................. 113
Factory reset Cisco TelePresence Touch 10 ........................................................................ 114
Capture user interface screenshots ................................................................................... 115

**System settings** ............................................................................................................ 116
Overview of the system settings ........................................................................................ 117
Audio settings ...................................................................................................................... 123
CallHistory settings ............................................................................................................ 130
Cameras settings ................................................................................................................ 131
Conference settings .......................................................................................................... 137
FacilityService settings ..................................................................................................... 142
GPIO settings ..................................................................................................................... 143
H323 settings ....................................................................................................................... 144
Logging settings ................................................................................................................ 147
Macros settings .................................................................................................................. 148
Network settings ................................................................................................................ 149
NetworkServices settings .................................................................................................. 156
Peripherals settings ........................................................................................................... 162
Phonebook settings ........................................................................................................... 164
Provisioning settings ......................................................................................................... 165
Proximity settings .............................................................................................................. 168
RoomAnalytics settings .................................................................................................... 169
RoomReset settings .......................................................................................................... 170
RTP settings ......................................................................................................................... 171

Security settings ................................................................................................................. 172
SerialPort settings .............................................................................................................. 175
SIP settings ........................................................................................................................ 176
Standby settings ................................................................................................................ 180
SystemUnit settings ......................................................................................................... 182
Time settings ....................................................................................................................... 183
UserInterface settings ....................................................................................................... 187
UserManagement settings ............................................................................................... 190
Video settings ..................................................................................................................... 192
Experimental settings ...................................................................................................... 202

**Appendices** .................................................................................................................. 203
How to use Touch 10.......................................................................................................... 204
Set up remote monitoring ................................................................................................. 205
Access call information and answer a call while using the web interface ....................... 206
Place a call using the web interface .................................................................................. 207
Share content using the web interface .............................................................................. 209
Local layout control .......................................................................................................... 210
Control a local camera ...................................................................................................... 211
Control a far end camera ................................................................................................... 212
Packet loss resilience – ClearPath .................................................................................... 213
Room analytics .................................................................................................................. 214
Customize the video system’s Touch 10 user interface .................................................. 215
Customize the video system’s behavior using macros ..................................................... 217
Input source composition ............................................................................................... 218
Presentation source composition ..................................................................................... 220
Manage startup scripts ..................................................................................................... 222
Access the video system’s XML files ................................................................................ 223
Execute API commands and configurations from the web interface .............................. 224
Notes regarding screen technology .................................................................................. 225
GPIO interface .................................................................................................................. 226
Serial interface .................................................................................................................. 227
Open TCP Ports ................................................................................................................ 228
Get a new HTTPFeedback address from TMS .................................................................... 229
Technical specification ..................................................................................................... 230
Supported RFCs ................................................................................................................ 234
User documentation on the Cisco web site ....................................................................... 235
Cisco contacts .................................................................................................................... 236
Chapter 1

Introduction
User documentation and software

Products covered in this guide

- Cisco TelePresence MX700 with single camera
- Cisco TelePresence MX700 with dual camera
- Cisco TelePresence MX800 Single with single camera
- Cisco TelePresence MX800 Single with dual camera
- Cisco TelePresence MX800 Dual

User documentation

This guide provides you with the information required to administrate the video system.

The guide primarily addresses capabilities and configurations of on-premise registered video systems (CUCM, VCS), but a sub-set of the capabilities and configurations also applies to devices that are registered to our cloud service (Cisco Webex).

Refer to the \User documentation on the Cisco web site appendix for more information about the guides for this product.

Documentation on the Cisco web site

Visit the Cisco web site regularly for updated versions of the guides:

\https://www.cisco.com/go/mx-docs

Documentation for cloud registered devices

For more information on Cisco Webex room devices, visit:

\https://collaborationhelp.cisco.com

Software

Download software for the endpoint from the Cisco web site:

\https://software.cisco.com/download/home

We recommend reading the Software release notes (CE9):


Converting to CE software

Before upgrading from TC software to CE software, it is important to consider the upgrade requirements; otherwise upgrading to CE software can leave you with a non-functional deployment that requires you to downgrade.

Refer to the software release notes, and the

\Upgrade the system software\ chapter.

Cisco Project Workplace

Explore the Cisco Project Workplace to find inspiration and guidelines when preparing an office or meeting room for video conferencing:

\https://www.cisco.com/go/projectworkplace
What’s new in CE9

This chapter provides an overview of the new and changed system settings, and the new features and improvements in the Cisco Collaboration Endpoint software version 9 (CE9) compared to CE8.

For more details, we recommend reading the Software release notes:

New features and improvements in CE9.5

Presentation source composition

With using two or more content sources and sending them as one image, you can create a new experience for sharing in meetings.

This gives users more flexibility with what they present to remote sites. You can configure the presentation composition through in-room controls together with macros or an external controller.

The maximum number of different sources is determined by the device in use:
• MX200 G2, MX300 G2, Room Kit, and SX20: two sources
• Room 55, Room 55 Dual, Room 70, and Room Kit Plus: three sources
• MX700, MX800, Room 70 G2, Room Kit Pro, and SX80: four sources

You can only compose content that has been shared through a cable.

Classroom set-up

The Classroom template uses macros to tailor a room set-up that works well for presenting and teaching scenarios. The template provides easy setup, management, and use of the room.

The Classroom set-up works similarly to the Briefing Room set-up, but it doesn’t require three screens.

Support for Korean keyboard

Korean keyboard input is supported on Touch 10 when the user interface language is set to Korean.

Welcome banner

You can set up a welcome banner that users see after they sign in to the video system’s web interface or command line interface. The banner can for example contain information you need in order to get started, or things you must be aware of when setting up the system.
New features and improvements in CE9.4

Rebranding from Cisco Spark to Cisco Webex
Cisco Spark has changed its name to Cisco Webex, and the user interface elements that displayed Spark are changed to Webex. In the activation flow you now see Cisco Webex as a registration option instead of Cisco Spark.

The following products have gotten new names:

• Cisco Spark Room Kit is now Cisco Webex Room Kit
• Cisco Spark Room Kit Plus is now Cisco Webex Room Kit Plus
• Cisco Spark Codec Plus is now Cisco Webex Codec Plus
• Cisco Spark Quad Camera is now Cisco Quad Camera
• Cisco Spark Room 55 are now Cisco Webex Room 55
• Cisco Spark Room 70 are now Cisco Webex Room 70
• Cisco DX70 is now Cisco Webex DX70
• Cisco DX80 is now Cisco Webex DX80

CUCM provisioning of the admin settings lockdown configuration
The admin settings lockdown configuration, that was introduced in CE9.2.1, can now be provisioned from CUCM. You can lock a selection of the settings on the settings menu on all of your devices simultaneously when you configure them through CUCM.

Your CUCM may require a new device package in order to expose the new fields for this configuration.

Changed default HTTP mode from HTTP+HTTPS to HTTPS
The default value of NetworkServices HTTP Mode is changed from HTTP+HTTPS to HTTPS. This is to increase the security of the room devices on default configuration. Upgrading from earlier software versions will not automatically change the default value and it will stay on HTTP+HTTPS to avoid breaking current HTTP implementations.

The change is seen on new systems running CE9.4.0 or later, or if the device is factory reset on CE9.4.0. The HTTP requests are redirect to HTTPS and on the first visit to the device’s web interface, the device displays an “Insecure connection warning”. To proceed to the web interface, you need to create an exception in your browser. This is a one-time operation unless you access the web interface with a different browser that has never visited the device web interface or if the device is factory reset.

In-Room Control update
You can add buttons for as many panels as you want on the home screen as well as on the in-call screen of the user interface.
New features and improvements in CE9.3

Backup and restore settings and custom elements
You can include custom elements as well as configurations in a backup file bundle (zip). You can choose which of the following elements to include in the bundle:

- Branding images
- Macros
- Favorites
- Sign-in banner
- In-room control panels
- Configurations (all or a sub-set)

In previous software versions, you could only backup the configurations.

The backup file can either be restored manually from the video system's web interface, or you can generalize the backup bundle so that it can be provisioned across multiple video systems, for example using Cisco UCM or TMS.

You will find the backup and restore functionality under Maintenance > Backup and Restore on the video system's web interface.

Provisioning of custom elements
The backup bundle, as described above, can be provisioned to many video systems using Cisco UCM or TMS. It is important that device specific information is removed when creating a backup bundle intended for multiple video systems. If you include device specific information in such a bundle, you may end up with multiple video systems that cannot be reached.

By provisioning a non-system specific backup bundle, you can for example, copy a video system's setup with macros, branding elements, and in-room control panels across multiple video systems.

Currently, provisioning via Cisco UCM will not restore any configurations, only the other custom elements; TMS will restore everything that is included in the backup bundle.

See the release note for more details about provisioning.

In-Room Control updates
The following functionality is added to the in-room control feature:

- You can add buttons for up to 20 panels in total. The buttons appear on the home screen or the in-call screen of the user interface depending on the panel type.
- As before, there are three types of in-room control panels: global panels (always available), in-call panels (available only when in call), and out-of-call panels (only available when not in a call). The entry point for the global panel has been removed from the status bar (top right corner of the user interface). Buttons to open global panels are added to both the home screen and the in-call screen instead, together with the buttons for the out-of-call only and in-call only panels, respectively.
- You can make standalone trigger-buttons, which are buttons that trigger an event directly, without opening a panel on the user interface.

Also the following features are added in the in-room control editor:

- Some new icons are available.
- A set of colors to choose from for the in-room-control buttons.
- Double click text elements to edit text directly.
- Drag and drop in-room control XML files into the editor.

For a full description of in-room controls, see the in-room control / customization guide on https://www.cisco.com/go/in-room-control-docs
Support for ISDN Link

ISDN Link with software version IL1.1.7 is supported for all video systems that supports CE9.3.0.

As before, when using automatic pairing (which allows the ISDN Link to be automatically discovered by the video system) IPv6 must be enabled on the video system.

One Button to Push snooze

You are able to snooze an One Button to Push (OBTP) meeting reminder for 5 minutes. The snooze time cannot be changed. The reminder typically appears if you are in a call and a scheduled meeting is about to start. You can snooze the reminder for 5 minutes each time it appears until the meeting has ended.

Adjust the call rate before making a call

As soon as you start typing in the Search or dial field, you can open a dialog and select a custom call rate. In earlier releases this was available only when selecting an entry from the Directory.

If you don’t select a custom call rate, you get the rate set in the Conference Default Call Rate setting.

Select ring-tone and adjust ring-tone volume

You can select a ring-tone and adjust the ring-tone volume from the settings menu on the user interface. In the previous releases this was done from the web interface.

Resume a postponed upgrade

When you get a notification about software upgrade, you can choose Upgrade now or Postpone. If you postpone the upgrade, you can resume the upgrade from the Settings > About this device menu on the user interface when you are ready; you don’t have to wait for 6 hours like you had to before.

If you don’t manually resume the upgrade, the upgrade will start automatically after 6 hours.

Prevent system information from being exposed in the user interface

You can prevent important system information from being exposed in the user interface, for example:

- IP addresses (video system, touch controller, UCM/ VCS registrar)
- MAC address
- Serial number
- Software version

To enable this feature the following must be done:

- A passphrase must be set for all users with administrator rights
- User Interface Settings Menu Mode must be set to Locked
- User Interface Security Mode must be set to Strong

This feature also means that the IP address is not displayed on the screen when you disconnect a Touch controller.

Accessibility: Flashing screen on incoming calls

You can configure the video system so that the screen and Touch controller flashes red / light grey when the system receives an incoming call. This feature is mainly targeting hearing impaired users, making it easier for them to notice an incoming call.

The feature is disabled by default, and must be enabled by the Accessibility Incoming Call Notification setting.

One common API guide

We have gathered all API information in one API guide, that covers all products. This is in contrast to earlier releases were we have had one API guide per product.
New features and improvements in CE9.2

Macro framework

The macro framework allows users and integrators to write JavaScript macros in order to automate scenarios and customize endpoint behavior so that it suits an individual customer’s requirements.

The combination of macros and powerful features such as listening for events/status changes, automating execution of commands and configurations, and providing local control functionality for the In-Room control feature, provides many possibilities for custom setups.

Minor behavioral changes, such as having the video system in Do Not Disturb for an infinite amount of time, can be easily realized by macros. Some other examples are: Reset configurations automatically, make a call at a certain time of the day, and issue alert or help messages depending on status changes.

The macro editor, which also provides several example macros, is available from the video system’s web interface.

Branding and halfwake customization

You can upload your own text and images to customize the appearance of the screen and user interface in both the halfwake state and the awake state.

In the Halfwake state you can:
- Add a background brand image to the screen and user interface.
- Add a small logo in the bottom right corner of the screen and user interface.

In the Awake state you can:
- Add a small logo in the bottom right corner of the screen and user interface.
- Add a label or message in the bottom left corner of the screen (not the user interface).

Source composition

You can compose up to four input sources (depending on how many input sources are available on the codec) into one image. This is the image that will be sent in the main video stream to the far end in a call. Source composition can only be enabled via the API, so we recommend creating a user interface extension combined with a macro to control the compositions on demand.

This feature replaces some of the functionality that was provided by the TC Console application for TC software.

HTTP Proxy support

You can set up the video system to go through a HTTP Proxy when registering it to Cisco’s cloud service, Cisco Spark.

User interface features

- The Settings panel is restructured.
- The Settings panel in the user interface (Touch 10) can be protected by the video system’s admin password. If the password is blank, anyone can access the Settings and factory reset the system.
- If you select the Russian language on the user interface, you can choose between a Russian keyboard and a keyboard with a Latin character set.
- Arabic and Hebrew languages are added to the user interface. Also localized keyboards are included.
- Basic IEEE 802.1x settings are added to the Settings panel in the user interface.

Support for the Snap to Whiteboard feature

The Snap to Whiteboard feature is now available for all products that have a camera with speaker track functionality: SX80 with Cisco TelePresence Speaker Track 60 camera or Cisco Spark Quad camera, MX700/ MX800 with dual camera, Room Kit, Room Kit Plus, Room 55 and Room 70.

When the video system detects a person that is speaking close to the whiteboard, the camera view will switch to the whiteboard area. The wizard in the Settings panel on the Touch 10 user interface helps you to set up the feature and define where the whiteboard area is.

Briefing Room mode

The Briefing Room feature, which was introduced already in TC software, has been reworked. The in-room control framework is used for creating the associated user interface elements.

As before, Briefing Room is supported only for dual camera systems. Also, you need a Precision 60 camera, and a total of three screens.

Mute and unmute remote participants in a CMS hosted conference (Active Control)

When a video system is enabled for Active Control in a CMS (2.1 or later) conference you can mute and unmute remote participants from the participant list on the user interface (the feature must also be enabled on the CMS).

A video system that is running software version CE9.2 will not be unmuted directly. When you try to unmute such a video system remotely, a message will show up on its screen requesting the user to unmute the audio locally.
API commands for Custom input prompt

API commands are introduced to allow for an input prompt in the user interface: `xCommand UserInterface Message TextInput *`. When issuing the display command a prompt with your custom text, a text input field for the user, and a submit button, shows up on the user interface. For example, you can prompt a user to leave feedback after an ended call. You can specify what type of input you want from the user: single line text, numeric, password, or PIN code.

The prompt can only be enabled via the API, so it is recommended to combine it with macros and either a custom user interface panel or an auto-triggered event.

Certificate upload via API

ASCII PEM formatted certificates can be installed directly using multiline API commands (`xCommand Security Certificates CA Add`, or `xCommand Security Certificates Services Add`). You can also upload certificates to a video system from its web interface, as before.

API commands for user management

You can create and manage user accounts directly using API commands (`xCommand UserManagement User *`). As before, you can also do this from the video system's user interface.

Preview mode for In-Room Controls

The In-Room Control editor has a new preview mode. A virtual Touch 10 user interface shows how the design looks on the user interface. The user interface is interactive so that you can test the functionality. It produces real events on the video system, which can trigger any functionality you have created with a third-party control system or with a macro. A console in the right pane displays both the widget values when interacted with, and control system feedback messages.

Intelligent Proximity changes

A Proximity indicator is displayed on the screen (middle right) to inform that one or more clients are paired to the system with Cisco Proximity. The old indicator (top left), which was always shown when Proximity was enabled, has been removed.

You can no longer disable the Proximity services from the user interface.

The ultrasound settings have moved from Peripherals Pairing Ultrasound to Audio Ultrasound.

Automatic factory reset when changing the call service (device activation)

The video system will automatically factory reset and restart when using the user interface to change the device activation method, for example from VCS to Cisco UCM. This will prevent conflicting configurations when provisioning the video system to a new service.

Changing the provisioning from the API will not automatically factory reset the video system.

Support for separate RTP port ranges for audio and other media

You can configure the video system so that audio uses a different RTP port range than other media. The two ranges cannot overlap. As default, all media use the same RTP port range.
New features and improvements in CE9.1

Dual Screen experience and Active Control for CMS based meetings

Dual screen video systems can utilize both screens for video in a CMS based meeting. The video system receives two transcoded video streams and one content stream from the CMS, and utilizes both screens to render the streams.

With Active Control enabled, you get a participant list that shows all meeting participants and their current activity status, such as mute, sharing and active speaker indication. You can change the layout seamlessly from the touch interface by using the layout selection panels.

New wake-up experience

The wake-up experience has two additional standby states: Halfwake and Standby with motion detection. When automatic wake-up is enabled, the video system detects presence using ultrasound (motion detection) or when pairing to a Cisco Proximity client. The video system wakes up with a greeting before going into the Halfwake state, which has a simple on-screen interaction guide.

Additions for Room Analytics

Detect people presence in the room: The video system has the capability to find whether there are people present in the room. The feature is based on ultrasound, and it does not keep record of who was in the room, only whether or not the room is in use.
New features and improvements in CE9.0

Updated user interface
The user interfaces on the Touch 10, on screen, and on integrated touch screens have been updated. The main menu items on the home screen have been replaced with more prominent activities.

Some of the settings have been removed from the Touch 10 advanced settings menu to align with the on-screen display menu.

Updated In-Room Control editor
The In-Room Control editor is updated with a new look, improved logic and usability for producing a control interface more efficiently. In addition, a new directional pad widget and an In-Room Control simulator is added.

Added language support
We have added support for Portuguese (Portugal) to the on-screen display and Touch controller menus.

Other changes
- Support for HTTPS client certificates has been added.
- Unplugging the presentation cable stops the presentation sharing instantly.
System configuration changes in CE9.5

New configurations
NetworkServices SSH HostKeyAlgorithm

Configurations that are removed
Provisioning RoomType ClassroomEnabled

Configurations that are modified
Audio Ultrasound MaxVolume
  OLD: Default value: 70
  NEW: Default value: 66
System configuration changes in CE9.4

New configurations
Cameras Camera [1..2] Mirror
Conference FarendMessage Mode
SIP MinimumTLSVersion

Configurations that are removed
NetworkServices HTTP Proxy Allowed

Configurations that are modified
Network [1] DNS DNSSEC Mode
OLD: User role: ADMIN, USER
NEW: User role: ADMIN

Network [1] Speed
OLD: User role: ADMIN, USER
NEW: User role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR

NetworkServices HTTP Mode
OLD: Default value: HTTP+HTTPS
NEW: Default value: HTTPS

NetworkServices SNMP CommunityName
OLD: User role: ADMIN
NEW: User role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR

NetworkServices SNMP Host [1..3] Address
OLD: User role: ADMIN
NEW: User role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR

NetworkServices SNMP Mode
OLD: User role: ADMIN
NEW: User role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR

NetworkServices SNMP SystemContact
OLD: User role: ADMIN
NEW: User role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR

NetworkServices SNMP SystemLocation
OLD: User role: ADMIN
NEW: User role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
System configuration changes in CE9.3

New configurations

Network [1] DNS DNSSEC Mode
NetworkServices HTTP Proxy PACUrl
SystemUnit CrashReporting Advanced
SystemUnit CrashReporting Mode
SystemUnit CrashReporting URL
UserInterface Accessibility IncomingCallNotification
UserInterface Security Mode

Configurations that are modified

NetworkServices HTTP Proxy Allowed
  OLD: Default value: True
  NEW: Default value: False

NetworkServices HTTP Proxy Mode
  OLD: Value space: Manual/Off
  NEW: Value space: Manual/Off/PACUrl/WPAD

Security Session MaxSessionsPerUser
  OLD: Value space: Integer (0..100); Default value: 0
  NEW: Value space: Integer (1..20); Default value: 20

Security Session MaxTotalSessions
  OLD: Value space: Integer (0..100); Default value: 0
  NEW: Value space: Integer (1..20); Default value: 20

Configurations that are removed

Provisioning HttpMethod
System configuration changes in CE9.2

New configurations

Audio Ultrasound MaxVolume
  Replacing Peripherals Pairing Ultrasound Volume MaxLevel

Audio Ultrasound Mode
  Replacing Peripherals Pairing Ultrasound Volume Model

Cameras Camera[1..2] Focus Mode
  Added for the integrated cameras

Macros AutoStart

Macros Mode

NetworkServices HTTP Proxy Allowed

NetworkServices HTTP Proxy LoginName

NetworkServices HTTP Proxy Mode

NetworkServices HTTP Proxy Password

NetworkServices HTTP Proxy Url

RTP Video Ports Range Start

RTP Video Ports Range Stop

Security Session FailedLoginsLockoutTime

Security Session MaxFailedLogins

UserInterface CustomMessage

UserInterface OSD HalfwakeMessage

UserInterface SettingsMenu Mode

Configurations that are removed

Peripherals Pairing Ultrasound Volume MaxLevel
  Replaced by Audio Ultrasound MaxVolume

Peripherals Pairing Ultrasound Volume Mode
  Replaced by Audio Ultrasound Mode

Configurations that are modified

Cameras Camera[n] Focus Mode
  OLD: Value space: Auto/Manual
  NEW: Value space: Auto/AutoLimited/Manual

Cameras SpeakerTrack Closeup
  OLD: User role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
  NEW: User role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR, USER

Cameras SpeakerTrack Whiteboard Mode
  OLD: User role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
  NEW: User role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR, USER

Security Audit Logging Mode
  OLD: Default value: Off
  NEW: Default value: Internal

UserInterface Language
  NEW: Arabic and Hebrew added to valuespace
System configuration changes in CE9.1

New configurations
RoomAnalytics PeoplePresenceDetector

Configurations that are removed
None

Configurations that are modified

Conference DefaultCall Rate
OLD: Default value: 3072
NEW: Default value: 6000

Conference MultiStream Mode
OLD: Valuespace: Off; Default value: Off
NEW: Valuespace: Auto/Off; Default value: Auto

Network[ 1] IEEE8021X Password
OLD: Valuespace: String(0, 32)
NEW: Valuespace: String(0, 50)

Standby WakeupOnMotionDetection
OLD: Default value: Off
NEW: Default value: On

Video Input Connector [n] PresentationSelection
OLD: Valuespace: AutoShare/Manual/OnConnect
NEW: Valuespace: AutoShare/Desktop/Manual/OnConnect
System configuration changes in CE9.0

New configurations
Cameras SpeakerTrack Closeup
NetworkServices HTTPS Server MinimumTLSVersion
NetworkServices HTTPS StrictTransportSecurity
Peripherals Pairing CiscoTouchPanels EmcResilience
Standby WakeupOnMotionDetection

Configurations that are modified
Cameras Camera [n] *
  OLD: User role: ADMIN, USER
  NEW: User role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Cameras PresenterTrack *
  OLD: User role: ADMIN, USER
  NEW: User role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Cameras SpeakerTrack *
  OLD: User role: ADMIN, USER
  NEW: User role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Conference MultiStream Mode
  OLD: Value space: Auto/Off
  NEW: Value space: Off
UserInterface Language
  NEW: Portuguese added to value space

Configurations that are removed
UserInterface UserPreferences
Conference VideoBandwidth PresentationChannel Weight
Standby AudioMotionDetection
Configurations with the new INTEGRATOR user role

A new user role – INTEGRATOR – is introduced in CE9.0. It has been added to the following configurations:

- Audio DefaultVolume
- Audio Input HDMI [n] *
- Audio Input Line [n] *
- Audio Input Microphone [n] *
- Audio MicrophoneReinforcement *
- Audio Microphones Mute Enabled
- Audio Output Line [n] *
- Audio SoundsAndAlerts *
- CallHistory Mode
- Cameras Camera [n] *
- Cameras PowerLine Frequency
- Cameras PresenterTrack *
- Cameras SpeakerTrack *
- Conference DefaultCall Rate
- Conference DoNotDisturb DefaultTimeout
- FacilityService *
- GPIO Pin [n] Mode
- Peripherals Pairing Ultrasound Volume MaxLevel
- Peripherals Pairing Ultrasound Volume Mode
- Peripherals Profile *
- SerialPort BaudRate
- SerialPort Mode
- Standby BootAction
- Standby Control
- Standby Delay
- Standby StandbyAction
- Standby WakeupAction
- Standby WakeupOnMotionDetection
- SystemUnit Name
- Time Zone
- UserInterface OSD Output
- UserInterface Wallpaper
- Video ActiveSpeaker DefaultPIPPosition
- Video Input Connector [n] CameraControl Camerald
- Video Input Connector [n] CameraControl Mode
- Video Input Connector [n] InputSourceType
- Video Input Connector [n] Name
- Video Input Connector [n] OptimalDefinition Profile
- Video Input Connector [n] PresentationSelection
- Video Input Connector [n] Quality
- Video Input Connector [n] RGBQuantizationRange
- Video Input Connector [n] Visibility
- Video Monitors
- Video Output Connector [n] *
- Video Presentation DefaultPIPPosition
- Video Selfview Default *
- Video Selfview OnCall *

<path> * means that the change applies to all configurations starting with <path>. 
Cisco TelePresence MX700 and MX800 are part of the performance line within the Cisco portfolio of integrated video collaboration room systems. These systems integrate powerful functionality into an all-in-one solution for medium-to-large meeting rooms. The MX700 has two 55" LED monitors, MX800 Single has one 70" LED monitor, and MX800 Dual has two 70" LED monitors.

The MX700 and MX800 systems come standard with a built-in amplifier and speaker system for high fidelity sound. You can choose from a single camera, or a dual camera speaker-tracking solution for MX700 and MX800 Single; MX800 Dual comes only with the dual camera speaker-tracking solution. Both cameras deliver the best possible video imaging with up to 20x zoom and 1080p60 resolution. Premium resolution and dual display are also standard features on the MX700 and MX800. The Cisco Touch 10 provides an easy-to-use interface for both MX700 and MX800 systems.

Industry standards compliance lets the MX700 and MX800 support calls with any third party, standards-based system, including software-based video conferencing solutions. And, as the industry’s first H.265-ready systems (in SIP calls), the MX700 and MX800 lay the foundation for future bandwidth efficiencies.

Features and benefits

- Powerful and feature-rich video systems with ultimate video and audio quality.
- High performance video collaboration codec.
- High-definition pan-tilt-zoom camera.
- Everything you need in one unit: screen(s), speakers, codec, camera, microphones.
- Three mounting options: wall mount, free standing floor stand, floor stand secured to the wall.
- Built-in speaker tracking system as option.
- Embedded MultiSite conferencing option that allows up to four additional participants (individual transcoding, no external bridge).
- Four simultaneous video inputs.
- 1080p60 main video and 1080p30 content.
- One button to push (OBTP) to start a meeting.
- Ideal for team-based collaboration, boardrooms, meeting rooms and video centric rooms.
- Dual presentation outside of a call (e.g. use the MX700 dual screens to compare two presentations or documents).
- Optimal definition up to 1080p60.
- H.323/SIP up to 6 Mbps point-to-point.
- Up to 10 Mbps total MultiSite bandwidth.
- Ability to connect up to four HD input sources and eight microphones directly to the codec.
- Full duplex audio with high-quality sound in mono, and stereo.
- Cisco TelePresence ClearPath packet loss protection technology.
- Native support for Cisco Unified Communications Manager (requires Cisco Unified Communications Manager version 8.6 or higher).
MX700 and MX800 at a glance (page 2 of 6)

MX700 with a single camera

- Camera (20x zoom, 1080p60)
- Loudspeakers (full range multi-channel and bass)
- Two 55" monitors
- Embedded codec
- Microphones (default: two; maximum: eight)
- Touch 10 user interface

Mounting options:
- Free standing floor stand
- Floor stand secured to the wall
- Wall mount
MX700 and MX800 at a glance (page 3 of 6)

MX700 with dual camera

- Two 55" monitors
- Dual camera assembly (speaker-track, 20x zoom, 1080p60)
- Embedded codec
- Microphones (default: two; maximum: eight)
- Loudspeakers (full range multi-channel and bass)
- Touch 10 user interface

Mounting options:
- Free standing floor stand
- Floor stand secured to the wall
- Wall mount
Cisco TelePresence MX700 and MX800

MX700 and MX800 at a glance (page 4 of 6)

MX800 Single with single camera

- **Camera**
  - (20x zoom, 1080p60)

- **Mounting options**
  - Free standing floor stand
  - Floor stand secured to the wall
  - Wall mount

- **Loudspeakers**
  - (full range multi-channel and bass)

- **70” monitor**

- **Embedded codec**

- **Microphones**
  - (default: two; maximum: eight)

- **Touch 10 user interface**
MX800 Single with dual camera

Dual camera assembly
(speaker-track, 20x zoom, 1080p60)

Loudspeakers
(full range multi-channel and bass)

70” monitor

Embedded codec

Microphones
(default: two; maximum: eight)

Touch 10 user interface

Mounting options

Free standing floor stand

Floor stand secured to the wall

Wall mount
MX700 and MX800 Dual

- **Loudspeakers** (full range multi-channel and bass)
- **Two 70" monitors**
- **Embedded codec**
- **Microphones** (default: two; maximum: eight)
- **Touch 10 user interface**
- **Dual camera assembly** (speaker-track, 20x zoom, 1080p60)

**Mounting options**
- Free standing floor stand
- Floor stand secured to the wall
- Wall mount
Power On and Off

Power On/Off with the Power switch

The power switch is behind the left side cover.
It is located in the same place for both MX700,
MX800 Single and MX800 Dual, all mounting options.

1. Remove the left side cover. It snaps to magnets.

2. The power switch is next to the power connector
   below the codec.

Restart and standby using the user interface

Restart the system
1. Select the contact information in the upper left corner of
   the user interface.
2. Select Settings, followed by Restart.
3. Select Restart again to confirm your choice.

Enter/exit standby mode
1. Select the contact information in the upper left corner of
   the user interface.
2. Select Standby.

Power Off or restart the system remotely

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Maintenance >
Restart.

Restart the system
Click Restart device... and confirm your choice.
It takes a few minutes before the system is ready for use.

Power Off the system
Click Shutdown device... and confirm your choice.

You cannot power the system on again remotely.
For the system to power up after a remote shutdown, turn the power switch Off and then On.
LED indicators (page 1 of 3)

**MX700**

**Codec LEDs**
- You must remove the side cover to be able to see the codec LEDs.
- The side cover is fastened with magnets.

**System LED**
- **Blinking:** The video system is starting up.
- **Pulsating:** The video system is in standby mode.

**Codec LEDs**
- **System failure:** Lights steady (red) when there is a serious problem with the codec.
- **Power:** Lights steady (white) when the codec has power.

**Camera failure LED**
- **Steady red light:** The camera has a serious error.

**Sub-system failure LEDs**
- There are four LEDs underneath the monitor(s). Normally, they are not lit.
- A steady red light indicates a serious error, and you should contact the Cisco support organization.
- The LEDs mean (numbered from left to right):
  1. Monitor failure.
  2. Power failure for LCD monitor or camera sub-systems.
  3. Power failure for audio sub-system.
  4. Power failure for LCD monitor backlight.
Codec LEDs
You must remove the side cover to be able to see the codec LEDs.
The side cover is fastened with magnets.

System LED / Camera failure LED
This LED operates as both system LED and camera failure LED.

Sub-system failure LEDs

Camera failure LED
Steady red light:
The camera has a serious error.

System LED
Blinking:
The video system is starting up.

Pulsating:
The video system is in standby mode.

Codec LEDs
System failure:
Lights steady (red) when there is a serious problem with the codec.

Power:
Lights steady (white) when the codec has power.

Sub-system failure LEDs

MX800 Single
LED indicators (page 3 of 3)

**MX800 Dual**

**Codec LEDs**
- You must remove the side cover to be able to see the codec LEDs.
- The side cover is fastened with magnets.

**System LED**
- **Blinking:** The video system is starting up.
- **Pulsating:** The video system is in standby mode.

**Codec LEDs**
- **System failure:** Lights steady (red) when there is a serious problem with the codec.
- **Power:** Lights steady (white) when the codec has power.

**Camera failure LED**
- **Steady red light:** The camera has a serious error.

**Sub-system failure LEDs**
- There are four LEDs underneath the monitor(s). Normally, they are not lit.
- A steady red light indicates serious error, and you should contact the Cisco support organization.
- The LEDs mean (numbered from left to right):
  1. Monitor failure.
  2. Power failure for LCD monitor or camera sub-systems.
  3. Power failure for audio sub-system.
  4. Power failure for LCD monitor backlight.
How to administer the video system  (page 1 of 4)

In general, we recommend you to use the web interface to administer and maintain the video system, as described in this administrator guide.

Alternatively, you can access the API of the video system by other methods:
- HTTP or HTTPS (also used by the web interface)
- SSH
- Telnet
- Serial interface (RS-232)

If you want more information about the different access methods, and how to use the API, refer to the API guide for the video system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Access method</th>
<th>Notes</th>
<th>How to enable/disable the methods</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| HTTP/HTTPS          | • Used by the web interface of the video system  
                      • Non-secure (HTTP) or secure (HTTPS) communication  
                      • HTTPS: Enabled by default  
                      • HTTP: Enabled by default only for video systems that have been upgraded to CE9.4 (or later) from an earlier software version, provided that the video system has not been factory reset after the upgrade. | NetworkServices > HTTP > Mode  
                                                                                  Restart the video system for changes to take effect                     |
| Telnet              | • Non-secure TCP/IP connection  
                      • Disabled by default                                                                                                                   | NetworkServices > Telnet > Mode  
                                                                                  You do not need to restart the video system. It may take some time for changes to take effect |
| SSH                 | • Secure TCP/IP connection  
                      • Enabled by default                                                                                                                     | NetworkServices > SSH > Mode  
                                                                                  You do not need to restart the video system. It may take some time for changes to take effect |
| Serial interface (RS-232) | • Connect to the video system with a cable. IP-address, DNS, or a network is not required  
                                      • Enabled by default  
                                      • We recommend using the default baud rate, because the video system may return much feedback (SerialPort > BaudRate)  
                                      • For security reasons, you are asked to sign in by default (SerialPort > LoginRequired)                                             | SerialPort > Mode  
                                                                                  Restart the video system for changes to take effect                        |

If all access methods are disabled (set to Off), you can no longer configure the video system. You are not able to re-enable (set to On) any of the access methods, and you must factory reset the video system to recover.

Tip

If the configuration or status is available in the API, the web interface setting or status translates into an API configuration or status as follows:

Set $X > Y > Z$ to Value (web) is the same as xConfiguration $X Y Z$: Value (API)

Check $X > Y > Z$ status (web) is the same as xStatus $X Y Z$ (API)

For example:

Set SystemUnit > Name to MySystem is the same as xConfiguration SystemUnit Name: MySystem

Check SystemUnit > Software > Version status is the same as xStatus SystemUnit Software Version

More settings and statuses are available in the web interface than in the API.
How to administer the video system (page 2 of 4)

The web interface of the video system

The web interface is the administration portal for the video system. You can connect from a computer and administer the system remotely. It provides full configuration access and offers tools and mechanisms for maintenance.

**Note:** The web interface requires that HTTP or HTTPS is enabled (refer to NetworkServices > HTTP > Mode setting).

We recommend that you use the latest release of one of the major web browsers.

#### Connect to the video system

Open a web browser and enter the IP address of the video system in the address bar.

#### How to find the IP address

1. Select the contact information in the upper left corner of the user interface.
2. Select **Settings**, followed by **About this device**.

#### Sign in

Enter user name and passphrase for the endpoint and click **Sign In**.

The system is delivered with a default user named **admin** with no passphrase. Leave the **Passphrase** field blank when signing in for the first time.

It is mandatory to set a password for the **admin** user.

#### Sign out

Hover the mouse over the user name and choose **Signout** from the drop-down list.
How to administer the video system (page 3 of 4)

How the web interface is organized

The web interface is organized in sub-pages. All sub-pages shown below are available if the video system is registered to an on-premise service (CUCM, VCS); the pages shown in grey color are not available if the video system is registered to the Cisco cloud service (Cisco Webex).

In both cases, a user that is signed in, sees only the pages that he has access rights for.

Read more about user administration, user roles and access rights in the ► User administration chapter.
How to administer the video system (page 4 of 4)

Settings and system information on the user interface

You have access to system information, and some basic configurations and system tests on the video system’s user interface.

System-critical settings and functions, such as network settings, service activation, and factory reset, may be protected by a passphrase, refer to the ▶ Restrict the access to the Settings menu chapter.

Some of the settings and tests are also part of the Setup assistant that is launched when the video system is powered up for the first time. The Setup assistant is described in the Getting Started Guide for systems running CE software.

Access Settings

1. Select the contact information in the upper left corner of the user interface.

2. Select Settings.

   A padlock symbol indicates that a setting is protected (locked down).

3. Select the setting you want to change, or the test you want to run.

   If a setting is locked down, an authentication window pops up, and you have to sign in with ADMIN credentials to proceed.
Chapter 2

Configuration
User administration

You have to sign in to get access to the web and command line interfaces. You can assign different roles to users, to determine what they should have access to.

The default user account

The video system comes with a default administrator user account with full access rights. The user name is admin and no passphrase is initially set.

! It is mandatory to set a passphrase for the admin user.

Read how to set the passphrase in the ► Change the system passphrase chapter.

Create a new user account

1. Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Security > Users.
2. Click Add new user...
3. Fill in the Username, Passphrase and Repeat passphrase input fields.
   As a default, the user has to change the passphrase when he signs in for the first time.
   Fill in the Client Certificate DN (Distinguished Name) field only if you use client certificates for authentication.
4. Check the appropriate Roles check boxes.
   If you assign the ADMIN role to a user, enter your own passphrase in the Your passphrase input field for verification.
5. Set the Status to Active to activate the user.
6. Click Create User.
   Use the Back button to leave without making any changes.

Edit an existing user account

If you make changes to a user that holds the Admin role, you must always enter your own passphrase in the Your passphrase input field for verification.

Change the user privileges

1. Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Security > Users.
2. Click the appropriate user in the list.
3. Choose user roles, set the status to Active or Inactive, and decide if the user has to change the passphrase on the next sign in.
   Fill in the Client Certificate DN (Distinguished Name) field only if you use certificate login on HTTPS.
4. Click Edit User to save the changes.
   Use the Back button to leave without making any changes.

Change the passphrase

1. Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Security > Users.
2. Click the appropriate user in the list.
3. Enter the new passphrase in the appropriate input fields.
4. Click Change passphrase to save the change.
   Use the Back button to leave without making any changes.

Delete the user account

1. Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Security > Users.
2. Click the appropriate user in the list.
3. Click Delete user... and confirm when prompted.

User roles

A user account may hold one or a combination of user roles. A user account with full access rights, like the default admin user, should possess the ADMIN, USER and AUDIT roles.

These are the user roles:

ADMIN: A user with this role can create new users, change most settings, make calls, and search the contact lists. The user cannot upload audit certificates and change the security audit settings.
USER: A user with this role can make calls and search the contact lists. The user can modify a few settings, for example adjust the ringtone volume and set the time and date format.
AUDIT: A user with this role can change the security audit settings and upload audit certificates.
ROOMCONTROL: A user with this role can create in-room controls. The user has access to the In-room control editor and corresponding development tools.
INTEGRATOR: A user with this role has access to settings, commands and status that are required to set up advanced AV scenarios, and to integrate our video systems with 3rd party equipment. Such a user can also create in-room controls.

Cisco Webex registered systems

If a video system is registered to Cisco’s cloud service (Cisco Webex), only local users with the INTEGRATOR and ROOMCONTROL user roles are available.
Change the system passphrase

You need to know the system passphrase in order to:
- Sign in to the web interface
- Sign in and use the command line interfaces

The default user account

The video system is delivered with a default user account with full access rights. The user name is *admin*, and initially, no passphrase is set.

⚠️ It is mandatory to set a passphrase for the default *admin* user in order to restrict access to system configuration. It is also mandatory to set a passphrase for any other user with ADMIN rights.

A warning, saying that the system passphrase is not set, is shown on screen until a passphrase is set for the *admin* user.

Other user accounts

You can create many user accounts for the video system.

Read more about how to create and manage user accounts in the ► User administration chapter.

Change your passphrase

1. Sign in to the web interface, hover the mouse over the user name, and choose *Change Passphrase* in the drop down list.

2. Enter the current passphrase and new passphrase in the input fields, and click *Change passphrase*.

   The passphrase format is a string with 0–64 characters.

   ▪ If the passphrase currently is not set, leave the *Current passphrase* field blank.

Change another user’s passphrase

If you have administrator access rights, you can change the password of any user.

1. Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to *Security > Users*.

2. Click the appropriate user in the list.

3. Enter the new passphrase in the *Passphrase and Repeat passphrase* input fields.

   If the user holds the Admin role, you must enter your own passphrase in the *Your passphrase* input field for verification.

4. Click *Change passphrase* to save the change.

   Use the *Back* button to leave without making any changes.
Restrict the access to the Settings menu

By default, any user has access to the Settings menu on the user interface.

We recommend that you restrict the access to prevent unauthorized users from changing the configuration of the video system.

---

The Settings menu on the user interface

If the menu is locked down, you must sign in to access the system-critical settings.

Select the contact information in the upper left corner of the user interface followed by Settings, in order to open the Settings menu.

---

Lock down the Settings menu

1. Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Setup > Configuration.
2. Go to UserInterface > SettingsMenu > Mode, and select Locked.
3. Click Save for the change to take effect.
   Now a user has to sign in with ADMIN credentials to get access to the system-critical settings on the user interface (Touch controller).

---

Unlock the Settings menu

1. Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Setup > Configuration.
2. Go to UserInterface > SettingsMenu > Mode, and select Unlocked.
3. Click Save for the change to take effect.
   Now any user has access to the complete Settings menu on the user interface (Touch controller).

---

Locked down settings

Locked down settings are marked with a padlock.

---

Unlock settings

If you click on the padlock, you are asked to sign in with an ADMIN user.

Once signed in, you can access all settings until you close the Settings menu.

---
System configuration

Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Setup > Configuration.

Find a system setting

Search for settings

Enter as many letters as needed in the search field. All settings that contain these letters are shown in the right pane. Settings that have these letters in their value space are also shown.

Select a category and navigate to settings

The system settings are grouped in categories. Choose a category in the left pane to show the associated settings.

Change a system setting

Check the value space

A setting’s value space is specified either by text following the input field or in a drop-down list that opens when you click the arrow.

Change a value

1. Choose the preferred value from the drop-down list, or enter new text in the input field.
2. Click Save for the change to take effect.

Use the Undo or Revert buttons if you do not want to make any changes.

About system settings

All system settings can be changed from the web interface.

Each system setting is described in the System settings chapter.

Different settings may require different user credentials. In order to be sure that an administrator is able to change all system settings, an administrator user must possess all user roles.

You can read more about user administration and user roles in the User administration chapter.
Add a sign in banner

Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Security > Sign In Banner.

1. Enter the message that you want to present to the user when he signs in.
2. Click Save to activate the banner.

About sign in banner

If a system administrator wants to provide initial information to all users, he can create a sign in banner. The message is shown when the user signs in to the web interface or the command line interface.

The maximum size is: 4 kByte

Welcome banner versus sign in banner

Sign in banner:
• The banner is shown before the user signs in to the web interface or the command line interface.

Welcome banner:
• The banner is shown after the user has signed in to the web interface or the command line interface.
Add a welcome banner

Adding a Welcome banner is only available using API commands; we don’t provide a dedicated user interface for it.

API commands

xCommand SystemUnit WelcomeBanner Set

This is a multiline command. Anything you input after you issue the command, is input to the command (including line breaks). Finish the input with a separate line containing just a period ending with a line break.

There are also a few more welcome banner commands, refer to the API-guide for more details.

- xCommand SystemUnit WelcomeBanner Clear
- xCommand SystemUnit WelcomeBanner Get

Example

xCommand SystemUnit WelcomeBanner Set <enter>
This is a welcome banner. <enter>
A welcome banner may have multiple lines. <enter>
. <enter>

About welcome banner

You can set up a welcome banner that users see after they sign in to the video system’s web interface or command line interface. The banner can have multiple lines.

The banner can for example contain information you need in order to get started, or things you must be aware of when setting up the system.

The maximum size is: 4 kByte

Welcome banner versus sign in banner

Sign in banner:
- The banner is shown before the user signs in to the web interface or the command line interface.

Welcome banner:
- The banner is shown after the user has signed in to the web interface or the command line interface.
Manage the service certificates of the video system

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Security > Service Certificates.

You need the following files:
- Certificate (file format: .PEM)
- Private key, either as a separate file or included in the same file as the certificate (file format: .PEM format)
- Passphrase (required only if the private key is encrypted)

The certificate and the private key will be stored in the same file on the video system.

Enable or disable, view or delete a certificate

Use the On and Off buttons to enable or disable a certificate for the different services.
Use the corresponding button to view or delete a certificate.

Add a certificate

1. Browse to find the Certificate file and Private key file (optional) on your computer.
2. Fill in the Passphrase if required.
3. Click Add certificate... to store the certificate on the video system.

About the service certificates of the video system

Certificate validation may be required when using TLS (Transport Layer Security).

A server or client may require that the video system presents a valid certificate to them before communication can be set up.

The video system’s certificates are text files that verify the authenticity of the system. These certificates may be issued by a certificate authority (CA).

Certificates are used for the following services: HTTPS server, SIP, IEEE 802.1X and audit logging.

You can store many certificates on the video system, but only one certificate can be enabled for each service at a time.
If authentication fails, the connection will not be established.
Manage the list of trusted certificate authorities (CAs)

Sign in to the web interface, navigate to Security > Certificate Authorities, and open the Custom CAs tab.

You need the following file:
• CA certificate list (file format: .PEM).

About trusted CAs
Certificate validation may be required when using TLS (Transport Layer Security).

The video system may be set up to require that a server or client presents its certificate to the video system before communication can be set up.

The certificates are text files that verify the authenticity of a server or client. The certificates must be signed by a trusted CA.

In order to verify the signature of the certificates, a list of trusted CAs must reside on the video system.

The list must include all CAs needed in order to verify certificates for both audit logging and other connections.

If authentication fails, the connection will not be established.

View or delete a certificate
Use the corresponding button to view or delete a certificate.

Upload a list of certificate authorities
1. Browse to find the file containing a list of CA certificates on your computer (file format: .PEM).
2. Click Add certificate authority... to store the new CA certificates on the video system.

The certificates and certificate issuers in the illustration are examples. Your system has other certificates.

Previously stored certificates are not deleted automatically.

The entries in a new file with CA certificates are appended to the existing list.
Set up secure audit logging

Sign in to the web interface, navigate to Setup > Configuration.

1. Open the Security category.
2. Find the Audit > Server settings, and enter the Address of the audit server. If you set PortAssignment to Manual, you must also enter a Port number for the audit server.
3. Set Audit > Logging > Mode to ExternalSecure.
4. Click Save for the change to take effect.

About secure audit logging

When audit logging is enabled, all sign in activity and configuration changes on the video system are recorded.

Use the Security > Audit > Logging > Mode setting to enable audit logging. Audit logging is disabled by default.

In ExternalSecure audit logging mode the video system sends encrypted audit logs to an external audit server (syslog server), which identity must be verified by a signed certificate.

The signature of the audit server is verified using the same CA list as other servers/clients.

If the audit server authentication fails, no audit logs are sent to the external server.

The certificate authority (CA) that verifies the certificate of the audit server must be in the video system’s list of trusted certificate authorities. Otherwise, logs will not be sent to the external server.

Refer to the Manage the list of trusted certificate authorities (CAs) chapter how to update the list.
Manage pre-installed certificates for CUCM via Expressway provisioning

Sign in to the web interface, navigate to Security > Certificate Authorities, and open the Preinstalled CAs tab.

View or disable certificates

Use the Details... and Disable buttons respectively, to view or disable certificates.

As an alternative to using the pre-installed certificates, you can append the certificates you need to the certificate list manually.

Refer to the Manage the list of trusted certificate authorities (CAs) chapter how to update the list of trusted certificates.

About pre-installed certificates

The pre-installed certificates in this list are only used when the video system is provisioned by Cisco Unified Communications Manager (CUCM) via Expressway (Edge).

Only Cisco Expressway infrastructure certificates are checked against this list.

If the validation of the Cisco Expressway infrastructure certificate fails, the video system will not be provisioned and registered.

Factory resetting the video system does not delete the list of pre-installed certificates.
Delete CUCM trust lists

The information in this chapter is only relevant for video systems that are registered to a Cisco Unified Communications Manager (CUCM).

Sign in to the web interface, navigate to Security > CUCM Certificates.

Delete the CUCM trust lists

Click Delete CTL/ITL to remove the trust lists.

As a general rule, you should not delete old CTL (Certificate Trust List) and ITL (Initial Trust List) files.

In these cases, you must still delete them:
• When you change the CUCM IP address.
• When you move the endpoint between CUCM clusters.
• When you need to re-generate or change the CUCM certificate.

Overview of trust list fingerprints and certificates

The trust lists’ fingerprints and an overview of the certificates in the lists are displayed on the web page.

This information may be useful for troubleshooting.

More information about trust lists

For more information about CUCM and trust lists, read the Deployment guide for TelePresence endpoints on CUCM that is available on the Cisco web site.
Change the persistency mode

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Security > Non-persistent Mode.

Check the persistency status

The active radio buttons show the current persistency status of the video system.

Alternatively, you can navigate to Setup > Status, and then open the Security category to see the Persistency status.

Change the persistency settings

All persistency settings are set to Persistent by default. You only have to change these settings if you want to make them Non-persistent.

1. Click the radio buttons to set the persistency for configurations, call history, internal logging, local phonebook (local directory and favorites) and IP connectivity (DHCP) information.

2. Click Save and reboot....

   The video system restarts automatically. After the restart, the behavior changes according to the new persistency settings.

   Logs, configurations, and other data that was stored before you switched to Non-persistent mode, are NOT cleared or deleted.

Persistency mode

Configurations, call history, internal logs, local phonebook (local directory and favorites list), and IP connectivity information are stored by default. Because all persistency settings are set to Persistent, a system restart does not delete this information.

Generally, we recommend you NOT to change the persistency settings. Only change to Non-persistent mode if you have to prevent users from being able to see or traceback to any logged information from the previous session.

In Non-persistent mode, the following information is lost or cleared each time the system restarts:

- System configuration changes
- Information about placed and received calls (call history)
- Internal log files
- Changes to the local contacts or favorites list
- All IP related information (DHCP) from the last session

Information that was stored before changing to Non-persistent mode is not automatically cleared or deleted. You must factory reset the video system to delete such information.

There is more information about performing a factory reset in the Factory reset the video system chapter.
Set strong security mode

Sign in to the web interface, navigate to Security > Strong Security Mode.

Read carefully about the consequences of strong security mode before you continue.

1. If you want to use strong security mode, click Enable Strong Security Mode... and confirm your choice in the dialog box that appears. The video system restarts automatically.

2. Change the passphrase when you are prompted. The new passphrase must meet the strict criteria as described. How to change the system passphrase is described in the ► Change the system passphrase chapter.

About strong security mode

Use strong security mode only when compliance with DoD JITC regulations is required.

Strong security mode sets very strict passphrase requirements, and requires all users to change their passphrase on the next sign in.

Return to normal mode

Click Disable Strong Security Mode... in order to restore the video system to normal mode. Confirm your choice in the dialog box that appears. The video system restarts automatically.
Cisco Proximity allows users to see, control, capture and share content directly on their own mobile devices (smartphone, tablet, or laptop), when the device is near a video system.

The mobile device can automatically pair with the video system when it comes within range of ultrasound transmitted by the video system.

The number of simultaneous Proximity connections depends on the type of video system. The client warns new users if the maximum number of connections has been reached.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Video system</th>
<th>Maximum number of connections</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Room Kit, Room 55, Room 55 Dual, Room 70, Room 70 G2</td>
<td>30 / 7 *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Codec Plus, Codec Pro</td>
<td>30 / 7 *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SX80</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SX10, SX20</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MX700, MX800</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MX200 G2, MX300 G2</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DX70, DX80</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* 30 connections when the View shared content on a mobile device Proximity service is disabled; 7 connections when this service is enabled.
Set up Intelligent Proximity for content sharing (page 2 of 5)

Install a Cisco Proximity client

Where to find the clients
You can download the Cisco Proximity clients for smartphones and tablets (Android and iOS), and laptops (Windows and OS X) free of charge from https://proximity.cisco.com

Clients for smartphones and tablets are also available directly through Google Play (Android) and Apple App Store (iOS).

End-user license agreement
Read the end-user license agreement carefully, https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/general/warranty/English/EU1KEN_.html

Supported operating systems

• iOS 7 and above
• Android 4.0 and above
• Mac OS X 10.9 and above
• Windows 7 and above

The tile based interface introduced with Windows 8 is not supported.
Set up Intelligent Proximity for content sharing (page 3 of 5)

Ultrasound emission
Cisco video systems emit ultrasound as part of the Proximity feature.

Use the Proximity > Mode setting to switch the Proximity feature – and thereby also ultrasound emission – On and Off.

Most people are exposed to ultrasound more or less daily in many environments, including industry, commercial applications and home appliances.

Even if airborne ultrasound may cause subjective effects for some individuals, it is very unlikely that any effects will occur for levels below 75 dB.

Room 70, Room 70 G2, Room 55, Room 55 Dual, Room Kit, Room Kit Plus, SX10N and MX Series:

• The ultrasound sound pressure level is below 75 dB at a distance of 50 cm or more from the loudspeaker.

DX70 and DX80:

• The ultrasound sound pressure level is below 75 dB at a distance of 20 cm or more from the loudspeaker.

Codec Plus, Codec Pro, SX10, SX20, and SX80:

• We cannot foresee the ultrasound sound pressure level on these video systems, because they emit ultrasound on third-party loudspeakers.

The volume control on the loudspeaker itself, and the Audio > Ultrasound > MaxVolume setting affect the ultrasound sound pressure level; the volume control on the remote control or Touch controller does not have any effect.

Headsets

DX70, DX80, and SX10N:

You can always use a headset with these systems because:

• DX70 and DX80 have dedicated headset outputs, on which we never emit ultrasound.
• SX10N plays ultrasound on the built-in loudspeakers.

Ultrasound is never emitted on the HDMI or audio outputs.

Room 70, Room 70 G2, Room 55, Room 55 Dual, Room Kit, Room Kit Plus, Codec Plus, Codec Pro, SX10, SX20, SX80, and MX Series:

• These systems are not designed for headset use.
• We strongly recommend you to switch off ultrasound emission if you use a headset with these video systems (set Proximity > Mode to Off). Then you cannot use the Proximity feature.
• Since these systems don’t have dedicated headset outputs, we are not able to control the sound pressure level from the connected headsets.
Set up Intelligent Proximity for content sharing

Enable Proximity services

1. Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Setup > Configuration.
2. Go to Proximity > Mode. Check that Proximity is On (default), so that the video system sends ultrasound pairing messages. Enable the services you want to allow. Only Wireless share from a desktop client is enabled by default.

   In order to fully utilise the Proximity functionality, we recommend that you enable all services.

   Place calls and control the video system:
   - Go to Proximity > Services > CallControl and choose Enabled.

   View shared content on a mobile device:
   - Go to Proximity > Services > ContentShare > ToClients and choose Enabled.

Wireless share from a desktop client:
- Go to Proximity > Services > ContentShare > FromClients and choose Enabled.

The Proximity indicator

You can see the Proximity indicator on the screen as long as at least one Proximity client is paired with the system. The indicator doesn’t disappear immediately when the last client unpairs. It may take a few minutes.

About Proximity

The Proximity feature is switched On by default.

When Proximity is switched On, the video system transmits ultrasound pairing messages. The ultrasound pairing messages are received by nearby devices with Proximity clients, and triggers the authentication and authorization of the device.

Cisco recommends – for the best user experience – that Proximity always is switched On.*

In order to get full access to Proximity, the Proximity services (Proximity > Services > ...) must be Enabled as well.

* We recommend not to use a headset, if you have switched On Proximity (ultrasound).
Set up Intelligent Proximity for content sharing (page 5 of 5)

Room considerations

Room acoustics
- Rooms with hard surfaces may cause challenges due to severe audio reflections. Acoustical treatment of meeting rooms is always highly recommended for the best meeting experience as well as Intelligent Proximity performance.
- Cisco recommends only one video system with Intelligent Proximity enabled in a room. Otherwise, interference is likely to occur, which may lead to problems with device discovery and session maintenance.

About privacy

In the Cisco Privacy statement and the Cisco Proximity Supplement you find information about data collection in the clients and privacy concerns that needs to be considered when deploying this feature in the organization. Refer to: ► https://www.cisco.com/web/siteassets/legal/privacy.html

Basic troubleshooting

Cannot detect devices with Proximity clients
- Some Windows laptops are not able to record sound in the ultrasound frequency range (20kHz-22kHz). This can be due to frequency limitations with the sound card, sound driver or the internal microphone of the particular device. Refer to the Support forum for more information.
- Check Settings > Issues and diagnostics on the user interface, or Maintenance > Diagnostics on the web interface of the video system. If there are no ultrasound related Issues listed ("Unable to verify the ultrasound signal"), ultrasound pairing messages are emitted by the video system as they should. Refer to the Proximity Support forum for further assistance with the client detection issues.

Audio artifacts
- If you can hear audio artifacts, like humming or clipping noise, decrease the maximum ultrasound volume (Audio > Ultrasound > MaxVolume).

Cannot share content from a laptop
- For content sharing to work, the video system and the laptop must be on the same network. For this reason Proximity sharing might fail if your video system is connected to your company network via Expressway, and your laptop is connected via VPN (VPN client dependent).

Additional resources

Cisco Intelligent Proximity site:
► https://www.cisco.com/go/proximity
Support forum:
► https://www.cisco.com/go/proximity-support
Adjust the video quality to call rate ratio

Video input quality settings
When encoding and transmitting video there is a trade-off between high resolution (sharpness) and high frame rate (motion).

The Video Input Connector n Quality setting must be set to Motion for the optimal definition settings to take any effect. With the video input quality set to Sharpness, the endpoint will transmit the highest resolution possible, regardless of frame rate.

Optimal definition profile
The optimal definition profile should reflect the lighting conditions in the video conferencing room and the quality of the camera (video input source). The better the lighting conditions and the better the quality of the camera, the higher the profile should be used.

Generally, the Medium profile is recommended. However, if the lighting conditions are very good, we recommend that you test the endpoint on the various Optimal Definition Profile settings before deciding on a profile. The High profile may be set in order to increase the resolution for a given call rate.

Some typical resolutions used for different optimal definition profiles, call rates and transmit frame rates are shown in the tables on the next page. The resolution and frame rate must be supported by both the calling and called systems.

Threshold for sending video at 60 fps
Use the Video Input Connector n OptimalDefinition Threshold60fps setting to decide when to allow sending video at 60fps.

For all resolutions lower than this threshold, the maximum transmitted frame rate will be 30fps; for higher resolutions, 60fps is possible if the available bandwidth is adequate.

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Setup > Configuration.

1. Go to Video > Input > Connector n > Quality and set the video quality parameter to Motion.
2. Go to Video > Input > Connector n > OptimalDefinition > Profile and choose the preferred optimal definition profile.
3. Go to Video > Input > Connector n > OptimalDefinition > Threshold60fps to set the threshold below which the maximum transmitted frame rate will be 30fps.
### Adjust the video quality to call rate ratio

Resolutions and frame rate [w×h@fps] obtained for different optimal definition profiles and call rates

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Call rate [kbps]</th>
<th>H.264, maximum 30fps</th>
<th>H.264, 60fps allowed at 512×288 and higher resolutions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128</td>
<td>320x180@30</td>
<td>512x288@30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>256</td>
<td>640x360@30</td>
<td>768x448@30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>384</td>
<td>768x448@30</td>
<td>1024x576@30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>576</td>
<td>1024x576@30</td>
<td>1280x720@30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>768</td>
<td>1280x720@30</td>
<td>1280x720@30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1152</td>
<td>1280x720@30</td>
<td>1280x720@30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1472</td>
<td>1280x720@30</td>
<td>1280x720@30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1536</td>
<td>1280x720@30</td>
<td>1280x720@30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2176</td>
<td>1280x720@30</td>
<td>1920x1080@30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3232</td>
<td>1920x1080@30</td>
<td>1920x1080@30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The maximum bit rate for H.265 is 3 Mbps. If the bit rate is set higher the codec uses H.264. In general, H.265 gives similar quality to H.264 at half the bandwidth (call rate).
Add corporate branding to the screen and Touch 10 user interface

Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Setup > Personalization, and open the Branding tab.

From this page you can add your own branding elements (background brand image, logo, custom message) to the video system.

Branding in the awake state

In the awake state you can:
- Add a logo in the bottom right corner (screen and Touch 10)
- Add a short message (text only) in the bottom left corner (only on screen, not on Touch 10)

Logo

We recommend:
- A black logo (the video system will add a white overlay with 40% opacity so that the logo and the other user interface elements go well together)
- PNG-format with transparent background
- Minimum 272×272 pixels (it will be scaled automatically)

Custom text

About Branding

The Branding feature, as describe in this chapter, allows you to customize the screen and Touch user interface appearance without compromising the overall Cisco user experience.

We recommend that you use this feature rather than our legacy Custom wallpaper feature, which prevents the use of functionality such as One Button to Push.

You cannot use the Branding feature and a Custom wallpaper at the same time.

If your video system is set up with a Custom wallpaper, you must click Disable the custom wallpaper before adding branding elements.
Add corporate branding to the screen and Touch 10 user interface (page 2 of 2)

Branding in the halfwake state

In halfwake state you can:

- Add a background brand image (screen and Touch 10)
- Add a logo in the bottom right corner (screen and Touch 10)
- Customize or remove the message at the center of the screen (only on screen, not on Touch 10). This is the message that informs the user how to start using the video system.

In general, we recommend that you keep the standard message. Change the message only if you have to adapt it to a different scenario, for example if you have a third party user interface.

**Logo**

We recommend:

- A white logo (so that it goes well with the dark background brand image)
- PNG-format with transparent background
- Minimum 272×272 pixels

**Background brand image**

- When the video system wakes up, the image is shown in full color; after a few seconds the image is automatically dimmed (transparent black overlay)
- Image format: PNG or JPEG
- Recommended size: 1920 × 1080 pixels
Add a custom wallpaper

Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to **Setup > Personalization**, and open the **Custom wallpaper** tab.

**Upload a custom wallpaper**
Overwrites any old custom wallpaper.

1. Browse to find the custom wallpaper image file.
2. Click **Upload** to save the file on the video system.
   - Supported file formats: BMP, GIF, JPEG, PNG
   - Maximum file size: 16 megapixels

The custom wallpaper is automatically activated once uploaded.

**Delete the custom wallpaper**

Delete fully removes the custom wallpaper from the video system.
You have to upload it anew if you want use it again.

**About a custom wallpaper**

If you want a custom picture as background on your screen, you may upload and use a custom wallpaper. A custom wallpaper will not appear on the Touch controller.

You can only store one custom wallpaper on the video system at a time; a new custom wallpaper overwrites the old one.

We recommend that you use our new Branding feature rather than this legacy Custom wallpaper feature. You will get a better overall Cisco user experience, and avoid loosing functionality such as One Button To Push and meeting information. See the ► Add corporate branding to the screen and Touch 10 user interface chapter.

You cannot use the Branding feature and a Custom wallpaper at the same time.

If your video system is set up with branding elements you must click **Continue without branding** before adding a custom wallpaper.
Choose a ringtone and set the ringtone volume

Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Setup > Personalization, and open the Ringtones tab.

Change the ringtone

1. Choose a ringtone from the drop-down list.
2. Click Save to make it the active ringtone.

Set the ringtone volume

Use the slide bar to adjust the ringtone volume.

Play back the ringtone

Click the play button (►) to play back the ringtone.

Use the stop button (■) to end the playback.

About ringtones

A set of ringtones are installed on the video system. Use the web interface to choose a ringtone, and set the ringtone volume.

You can play back the chosen ringtone from the web interface. Note that the ringtone will be played back on the video system itself, and not on the computer running the web interface.
Manage the Favorites list

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Setup > Favorites.

Import/Export contacts from file
Click Export to save the local contacts in a file; and click Import to bring in contacts from a file.

The current local contacts are discarded when you import new contacts from a file.

Add or edit a contact
1. Click Add contact to make a new local contact, or click a contact’s name followed by Edit contact.
2. Fill in or update the form that pops up.
Choose a folder in the folder drop down list in order to store the contact in a sub-folder.
Click Add contact method and fill in the new input fields if you want to store more than one contact method for the contact (for example video address, telephone and mobile number).
3. Click Save to store the local contact.

Delete a contact
1. Click a contacts name followed by Edit contact.
2. Click Delete to remove the local contact.

Manage Favorites using the video system’s user interface

Add a contact in the Favorites list
1. Select Call on the home screen.
2. Select the contact you want to add.
3. Select Add to favorites.
The contact you add will be placed in the top folder. You cannot select or create a sub-folder.

Remove a contact from the Favorites list
1. Select Call on the home screen.
2. Select the Favorites tab.
3. Select the contact you want to remove.
4. Select Remove favorite.

Add or edit a sub-folders
1. Click Add folder to make a new sub-folder, or click one of the listed sub-folders followed by Edit folder to change an existing sub-folder.
2. Fill in or update the form that pops up.
3. Click Save to create or update the folder.

Delete a sub-folder
1. Click a folder’s name followed by Edit folder.
2. Click Delete to remove the folder and all its contacts and sub-folders. Confirm your choice in the dialog that pops up.
Set up accessibility features

Flashing screen for incoming calls

To make it easier for the hearing impaired users to notice when someone is calling, the screen can be setup to flash red and gray on incoming calls.

1. Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Setup > Configuration.
2. Go to UserInterface > Accessibility > IncomingCallNotification and select AmplifiedVisuals.
3. Click Save.
Chapter 3

Peripherals
Connect external monitors (page 1 of 3)

MX700 and MX800 Dual support one external monitor, and MX800 Single supports two external monitors, in addition to the video systems’ integrated monitor(s).

The video system distributes the layout on all available monitors.

Always switch off power when you connect and disconnect monitors and other peripherals.

Remove the video system’s left side cover to get access to the codec connector panel and power switch. The cover is fastened with magnets.

Do not disconnect the integrated monitors from the codec, and do not use those connectors for anything else.

The reason for this is that the integrated monitor connections make use of multichannel audio, which drives the included speaker systems. Inserting third party equipment is likely to break the audio chain, causing the video system to fail from an audio perspective.
Connect external monitors (page 2 of 3)

Automatic setup

There is no special configuration needed on the video system in order to support dual monitors or triple monitors scenarios. By default the number of monitors are auto-detected, and the role of each monitor - whether it is intended to be the first, second, or third monitor - is automatically set according to the physical connections.

For example, if the total number of monitors are three, the following settings will be assumed when set to Auto:

- Video > Monitors: Triple
- Video > Output > Connector 1 > MonitorRole: First
- Video > Output > Connector 2 > MonitorRole: Second
- Video > Output > Connector 3 > MonitorRole: Third

When do you need manual setup

You can override the default behavior by setting one or more settings manually. You need manual setup when you want to:

- Dedicate a monitor to only show presentations
- Use one of the outputs for a recorder
- Replicate the same layout on more than one monitor
- Show the on-screen messages and indicators (OSD) on another monitor than the video output with the lowest number
- Set the resolution manually, e.g. if the video system fails to detect the native resolution and refresh rate of a monitor
Manual setup
The automatic setup works well for common single monitor, dual monitors, and triple monitors scenarios. For more complex scenarios, you may need manual configuration.

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Setup > Configuration, to find the settings referred below.

Set a role for each monitor
Define a role for each monitor with the Video > Output > Connector n > MonitorRole setting.

Choose monitor roles that match your monitor setup.

Set the number of monitors
Set the number of monitors with different layouts in your setup with the Video > Monitors setting.

When set to Auto, the video system automatically detects if a monitor is connected to a connector, and thereby also determines the number of monitors in the setup.

The other options allow you to fix a single, dual, or triple monitor setup, and to dedicate one monitor for presentations.

Choose on which monitor to display messages and indicators
Define on which monitor to display the messages and indicators on-screen with the UserInterface > OSD > Output setting.

When set to Auto, the video system determines which monitor to use based on the number of the connector.

Set the monitor resolution and refresh rate
The video system reads the native resolution of a monitor and outputs this if possible.
Typically, this gives the best possible picture for the monitor.

If auto-detection of resolution and refresh rate fails, you must set the resolution manually with the Video > Output > Connector n > Resolution setting.

About the number of monitors and the role of each monitor
The Video > Output > Connector n > MonitorRole setting assigns a role to the monitor that is connected to the output. The monitor role decide which layout (call participants and presentation) will appear on the monitor.

Monitors with the same monitor role get the same layout; monitors with different monitor roles get different layouts.

The Video > Monitors setting must reflect the number of different layouts in your room setup.

Most often the number of different layouts are the same as the number of physical monitors, but not always. If exactly the same layout shall be repeated on two or more monitors, the number of different layouts is less.

Note that a monitor can be reserved for presentations.

Example 1:
Three monitors in total, and the third monitor is dedicated to only show presentations:

- Video > Monitors: TriplePresentationOnly
- Video > Output > Connector 1 > MonitorRole: Auto
- Video > Output > Connector 2 > MonitorRole: Auto
- Video > Output > Connector 3 > MonitorRole: Auto
- UserInterface > OSD > Output: 1

Example 2:
Two monitors in total, and a recording device is attached to Connector 3 (DVI). OSD is on the monitor on Connector 2:

- Video > Monitors: Auto
- Video > Output > Connector 1 > MonitorRole: Auto
- Video > Output > Connector 2 > MonitorRole: Auto
- Video > Output > Connector 3 > MonitorRole: Recorder
- UserInterface > OSD > Output: 2
Connect input sources (page 1 of 2)

You can connect several external input sources to the video system simultaneously:

- Three for single camera systems
- Two for dual camera systems

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Setup > Configuration, to find the settings referred in this section.

Remove the video system’s left side cover to get access to the connectors. The cover is fastened with magnets.

About the video inputs

MX700 and MX800 has several input connectors. The following inputs are available for additional content sources:

- Two HDMI inputs (video systems with a single camera) / One HDMI input (video systems with a dual camera)
- One DVI-I input
- One combined S-video/Composite video input

Typically, the inputs are used for computers, but you can also connect cameras or other types of video and content sources.

Analog video input

Connector 5 comprises two BNC sockets, and is used for S-Video or Composite video signals.

- S-Video: Connect to both the Y and C connectors.
- Composite: Connect to the Y connector.

DVI-I and Analog video input

The DVI-I and combined S-Video/Composite video inputs cannot be used simultaneously.

Connect a camera

Typically, an external camera is connected to an HDMI input.

In addition, you must connect the camera via an Ethernet switch to the video system’s Ethernet 2 or Ethernet 3 port, or to the camera control DSUB-9 port. The type of camera determines whether to use Ethernet or DSUB-9.

Note about the DVI-I port and camera control

If you connect a camera to the DVI-I input, the video system need to know the camera’s serial number to be able to control it (because EDID information is not passed on from the camera to the video system). Use the following setting:

Cameras > Camera n > AssignedSerialNumber

Connect a computer

Connect a computer to a video input in order to share content locally or with conference participants. The codec supports two computers simultaneously.

Typically, computers are connected to Connector 3 (HDMI) or Connector 4 (DVI-I).

To get audio when using DVI-I, you must also connect the computer to one of the codec’s Audio Line inputs (Euroblock).
Connect input sources (page 2 of 2)

Set type and name for an input source

We recommend that you set type and name for an input source:

- Video > Input > Connector n > InputSourceType
- Video > Input > Connector n > Name

These settings determine the names and icons that are shown on the user interfaces. Intuitive names and icons make source selection easier.

About video and content quality

Use the Video > Input > Connector n > Quality setting to optimize quality with respect to motion or sharpness.

Typically, you should choose Motion when a large number of participants are present or when there is a lot of motion in the picture. Choose Sharpness when you want the highest quality of detailed images and graphics.

The default value is Motion for Connector

The default value is Motion for Connector 1, 2 and 5; and Sharpness for Connector 3 and 4.
Extend the number of input sources

You can customize our touch user interfaces to include input sources that are connected to a third-party external video switch. The sources will appear and behave as any other video source that is connected directly to the video system.

Architecture

You need a Cisco video system with a touch interface, a third-party control system, for example Crestron or AMX, and a third-party video switch. It is the control system, not the video system, that controls the video switch.

When you program the control system you must use the video system’s API (events and commands) in order to connect with the video switch and the controls on the touch interface. This way you can synchronize what is shown and done on the user interface with the actual state of the input sources.

Consult the CE Customization guide for full details about how to extend the user interface, and how to use the video system’s API to set it up. Go to:

► https://www.cisco.com/go/in-room-control-docs

* You need a user that holds the ROOMCONTROL, INTEGRATOR, or ADMIN user roles in order to access the API commands that you need when programming the control system.
Set up the SpeakerTrack feature  

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to **Setup > Configuration**, to find the settings referred.

The speaker track feature uses automatic camera framing to select the best view based on how many people are in the room. When closeup is enabled and a person in the room speaks, the system will find the person and select the best camera framing. The closeup may not include all the persons in the room. If you want all the persons in the room to be in the picture at all times you can turn off the closeup functionality.

### Configure speaker tracking

Use the **Cameras > SpeakerTrack** settings to configure speaker tracking.

**Cameras > SpeakerTrack > Mode**

- **Auto**: Speaker tracking is enabled in general. The system will detect people in the room and automatically select the best camera framing. Users can switch speaker track on or off instantly in the camera control panel on the Touch controller.
- **Off**: Speaker tracking is switched off. The speaker track on/off button will disappear from the Touch controller. The closeup function and the tracking mode will be disabled.

**Cameras > SpeakerTrack > Closeup**

This setting only applies when the Cameras SpeakerTrack Mode is set to **Auto**

- **Auto**: The system will zoom in on the person speaking.
- **Off**: The system will keep all the persons in the room in the camera framing at all times.

**Tracking mode**

The tracking mode defines how fast the camera view switch to a new speaker when the tracking algorithm detects a change.

Use the **Cameras > SpeakerTrack > TrackingMode** setting to select between the two modes.

- **Auto**: This is the default setting.
- **Conservative**: The system reacts slower to detected changes, and the camera view will switch to a new speaker later.

### Products that support speaker tracking

The following Cisco products support speaker tracking:

- MX700 and MX800 with dual camera
- SX80 with SpeakerTrack 60 camera or Quad camera
- Room Kit
- Room Kit Plus (Codec Plus and Quad Camera)
- Room Kit Pro (Codec Pro and Quad Camera)
- Room 55
- Room 55 Dual
- Room 70
- Room 70 G2
Set up the SpeakerTrack feature (page 2 of 2)

Settings that are overridden by the speaker track functionality

Applies only to video systems with a dual camera.

These settings are changed automatically when speaker tracking is on:

- **Video > Input > Connector n > Quality**
  
  These settings are always forced to **Motion** for the connectors where the dual cameras are connected. If both settings are already set to **Motion**, there is no change.

- **Video > Input > Connector n > OptimalDefinition > Threshold60fps**
  
  These settings will stay untouched if they are already equal for the connectors where the dual cameras are connected. If they are not equal the lowest threshold among the two is preferred.

- **Video > Input > Connector n > OptimalDefinition > Profile**
  
  These settings will stay untouched if they are already equal for the connectors where the dual cameras are connected. If they are not equal the preferred setting is the first value in the list, (**Normal, Medium, High**) that one of the two settings has.

The settings above are reset to the value they used to have, as soon as you turn off speaker tracking. This is regardless of whether you have used the user interface or the **Cameras > SpeakerTrack > Mode** setting to turn off speaker tracking.
Set up the Snap to Whiteboard feature  

The Snap to Whiteboard feature extends the speaker tracking functionality, thus you need a camera that supports SpeakerTrack:

- MX700 and MX800 with dual camera
- SX80 with SpeakerTrack 60 camera or Quad camera
- Room Kit
- Room Kit Plus (Codec Plus and Quad Camera)
- Room Kit Pro (Codec Pro and Quad Camera)
- Room 55
- Room 55 Dual
- Room 70
- Room 70 G2

With the Snap to Whiteboard extension, the camera captures both the person and the whiteboard when a person next to the whiteboard is speaking.

Without the Snap to Whiteboard extension, the camera captures only the person.

With the accurate distance (d) between the camera and whiteboard, the whiteboard must be placed across the room from the camera, as shown in the illustration.

When configuring the feature, you need to know the accurate distance between the camera and the whiteboard.

The Sound tracking area is from half the whiteboard and up. Thus, the person presenting on the whiteboard must stand upright next to the whiteboard. He or she cannot move about in the room.
Set up the Snap to Whiteboard feature (page 2 of 3)

The Snap to Whiteboard wizard is only available when:

- **Cameras > SpeakerTrack > Mode** is **Auto**.

Define the whiteboard area

Use the wizard on the Touch controller to define the whiteboard area.

1. Tap the contact information in the upper left corner of the Touch controller and open the **Settings** menu.
2. Tap **Snap to Whiteboard**.
   
   Sign in with ADMIN credentials if the **Settings** menu is passphrase protected on your video system.
3. Tap **Configure** or **Reconfigure** to start the wizard (depends whether you configure the feature for the first time or not).

4. Follow the instructions in the wizard – use the back button ← if you want to redo a step, and the next button → to move to the next step:
   
   - Move the slider to set the distance between the camera and the whiteboard. It is important that the distance is measured accurately.
   
   ![Distance Measurement](image)

   3 m ——— 7.2 m ——— 10 m

   - Adjust the camera view (pan, tilt, zoom) to frame the whiteboard. Leave some space on both sides for the person that will be speaking.
   
   ![Camera View](image)

   - Fine tune both cameras (pan, tilt, zoom) to show the same view.
   
   - Stand next to the whiteboard and start speaking.

   If the camera zooms to the view that you have chosen for the whiteboard, the feature is correctly set up, and ready to use. If not, see the troubleshooting notes to the right.

   - Tap ✓ to close the wizard, and ✗ to close the Settings panel.

Troubleshooting

If the camera does not move to the whiteboard position when the person who is speaking stands next to the whiteboard, check the following and redo the required steps in the wizard:

- Check that the whiteboard is placed across the room from the camera.
- Check that the distance between the camera and whiteboard is measured accurately.
- The person who is speaking must be close to the whiteboard. Furthermore, the person must stand upright so that the sound comes from the upper half of the whiteboard area.
Enable and disable Snap to Whiteboard

You can enable or disable the Snap to Whiteboard feature from the Settings menu on the Touch controller or from the web interface.

If the Settings menu on the Touch controller is open (not protected by the ADMIN passphrase), any user can switch the feature On and Off during a meeting or between meetings. Moreover, any user can reconfigure the feature.

From the Touch controller

1. Tap the contact information in the upper left corner of the Touch controller and open the Settings menu.
2. Tap Snap to Whiteboard.
   Sign in with ADMIN credentials if the Settings menu is protected by a passphrase on your video system.
3. Set the toggle switch to:
   - Enabled: Snap to Whiteboard is enabled, and the camera will capture both the person that speaks and the whiteboard he or she is standing next to.
   - Disabled: Snap to Whiteboard is disabled, and the camera will capture only the person that speaks.

From the web interface

1. Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Setup > Configuration.
2. Find the Cameras > SpeakerTrack > Whiteboard > Mode setting.
   - On: Snap to Whiteboard is enabled, and the camera will capture both the person that speaks and the whiteboard he or she is standing next to.
   - Off: Snap to Whiteboard is disabled, and the camera will capture only the person that speaks.

How to switch on speaker tracking

Speaker tracking, which can be switched on and off by the user at any time, must be switched on for the Snap to Whiteboard extension to work.

Tap the camera icon in the status bar of the Touch controller, and use the toggle button to switch speaker tracking on and off.
Set up the PresenterTrack feature (page 1 of 5)

The PresenterTrack feature enables the camera to follow the presenter, while the presenter moves about on stage. When the presenter leaves the stage, the tracking stops. A system administrator must define the stage area and the trigger zone. We recommend you to be in the room while setting up PresenterTrack.

Prerequisites

The PresenterTrack is supported with:

- Codec Plus with Precision 60 camera
- Room 70 with Precision 60 as external camera
- Codec Pro with Precision 60 camera or SpeakerTrack 60 camera
- Room 70 G2 with Precision 60 as external camera
- MX700 or MX800 with single or dual camera
- SX80 with Precision 60 camera or SpeakerTrack 60 camera

PresenterTrack feature

- Supports two persons in the cropped image.
- Can be used in combination with Briefing Room mode.
- You can use one of the SpeakerTrack 60 cameras for PresenterTrack.
- The camera uses digital pan, tilt, and zoom, so it will not move physically.
- PresenterTrack and SpeakerTrack cannot be used simultaneously. When you activate PresenterTrack, SpeakerTrack is disabled, and vice versa.

The exception is when using the Briefing Room set-up – both are active simultaneously in Q&A mode (when someone in the local audience asks a question, while the system is in Local Presenter mode).

Plan the room and the stage area

Consider where to place the camera, that is used for presenter tracking, to obtain an optimal user experience. Allow the audience or meeting participants to move naturally in the room, without being tracked unintended. The stage area is the zoomed-out overview image. Make it large enough so the presenter can move about on stage. When the presenter leaves the stage area, the tracking stops.

Plan the trigger zone

The trigger zone is the area where presenter tracking is triggered. The trigger zone must cover an area that enables the detection of a presenter’s face. Choose a location where the presenter(s) naturally will enter the stage, for example by the speaker’s podium or presenter’s desk. The trigger zone is not visible for person(s) coming up on stage, so make it easy for the person to be detected.

To avoid false face detection, make sure the background of the trigger zone is neutral. Avoid having the trigger zone in front of a monitor.

![Diagram of stage area and trigger zone](image-url)
Set up the PresenterTrack feature (page 2 of 5)

Step 1: Position the camera

Sign in to the web interface:

1. Navigate to Setup > Presenter Tracking.
2. Check the Enable PresenterTrack check box.
3. Click Configure... to open the configuration page.
   When you click the Configure... button on the video system's web interface, this will happen:
   • Standby is deactivated.
   • Full screen self-view is enabled.
   • The trigger zone rectangle is shown on screen.
   • If already active, the PresenterTrack feature is deactivated.

   Note that if you leave this web page at this stage, without doing any changes, the trigger zone rectangle is still visible on the video system's screen.
   • If you are not in the room: Click the Done button to remove the trigger zone rectangle on the screen.
   • If you are in the room: Tap the Camera icon on the Touch controller and choose a camera position from the list.

4. Choose a camera from the Camera source drop down list.
   A Precision 60 or SpeakerTrack 60 camera is required to enable the PresenterTrack feature. If the camera does not meet the requirements you will see a notification. Define the stage area. Use the Touch controller to adjust the full screen self-view (zoom, pan, tilt) if necessary. The camera must cover the stage area that is used by a presenter. When the presenter leaves the stage the camera will stop following the presenter.

Tip

• We recommend that you are in the room when you configure the PresenterTrack feature.
• Use the Touch controller to adjust the camera (zoom, pan, tilt) to define the stage area.
• Use the video system's web interface to define the trigger zone. At the same time, watch the screen of the video system to see the result.
• Activate the PresenterTrack feature from the camera panel on the Touch controller.
Step 2: Set the trigger zone

The trigger zone defines the area where presenter tracking is triggered.

You cannot see the video from the room in the web interface. An empty gray area represents the camera view and a dashed rectangle represents the trigger zone. Watch the video system screen to see the video from the room, together with the same dashed rectangle as you see in the web interface.

- Adjust the size and location of the trigger zone to cover a suitable area to detect a presenter’s face. The change you do on the video system’s web interface is reflected on the video system screen.
- The trigger zone must be large enough to detect a presenter face. Have in mind that people are of different heights.

Click **Save**.

A polygonal trigger zone

You can set up a rectangular trigger zone from the **Presenter Tracking** web page.

If you want to define a polygonal trigger zone, you must go to the **Setup > Configuration** page, and find the **Cameras > PresenterTrack > TriggerZone** setting.

The value of this setting is a string composed of the coordinate pairs of the vertices of the polygon.

**Example:**

Define the following trigger zone, which has 12 vertices.

```
(300,100) (1700,100) (1700,700) (1100,700) (1100,600) (1300,600) (1300,300) (700,300) (700,600) (900,600) (900,700) (300,700)
```

The coordinates of the vertices are:

- (300,100)
- (1100,600)
- (700,600)
- (1700,100)
- (1300,600)
- (900,600)
- (1700,700)
- (1300,300)
- (900,700)
- (1100,700)
- (700,300)
- (300,700)

The corresponding setting value is:

```
Cameras > PresenterTrack > TriggerZone: 300,100,1700,100,1700,700,1100,700,1100,600,1300,600,1300,300,700,300,700,900,600,900,700,300,700
```
Step 3: Test PresenterTrack in action

Activate PresenterTrack.

1. Tap the Camera icon in the upper right corner of the Touch controller.

2. Select Presenter from the list of camera positions to activate presenter tracking.

3. The camera is now ready for presenter tracking, and you can test the feature:
   a. Position yourself in the trigger zone.
   b. When you are detected the camera zooms in on you. Walk back and forth on stage and check that the camera follows you.
   c. Leave the stage area to stop presenter tracking.

If necessary, go back to Step 1 or Step 2 to adjust the size of the stage area or the trigger zone.

User scenarios

We do not support tracking of more than one person, but sometimes more than one person is in the cropped image.

When multiple faces are in the cropped image, the faces will be tracked as long as they all move in the same direction. If they move in different directions the tracking stops and the image zooms out and show the stage area. To start the presenter tracking again, the presenter must go to the trigger zone to be detected.

Scenario 1: A person is interviewed by another. They are both followed by the camera as long as they stand still or move in the same direction.

Scenario 2: When a presenter is replaced by another the tracking stops. The new presenter must move into the trigger zone to be detected by the camera.

If you need to disable, and thereafter enable, presenter tracking in a controlled manner this can be done on the Touch controller.

1. Tap the Camera icon in the status bar.

2. Deselect Presenter from the list of camera positions to disable PresenterTrack, and select Presenter again to enable the feature.
Diagnostics mode

In order to troubleshoot you can set the video system in PresenterTrack diagnostics mode.

- Sign in to the xAPI and run the following command:

  `xCommand Cameras PresenterTrack Set Mode: Diagnostic`

In diagnostics mode the video system screen shows the stage area (the zoomed out overview image), and the indicators:

- **RED**: The trigger zone.
- **YELLOW**: The cropped image that shows a zoomed in view of the presenter.
- **GREEN**: A face is detected and it is tracked.
- **GREEN BLINKING, FILLED**: Indicates a positive face detection. If the tracked individual does not get a valid face-read the square will become red.
- **RED BLINKING, FILLED**: Indicates a false face detection. After some seconds the tracking will stop.
- **BLUE**: A face is detected but the face is not tracked.

The red rectangle is the trigger zone.

The green square indicates the at face is tracked.

The blue square indicates the at face is detected but not tracked.

The yellow rectangle is the cropped image that follows the presenter. The yellow rectangle is not visible until a person steps into the trigger zone and is being tracked.
Briefing room set-up (page 1 of 6)

The briefing room set-up is designed to provide easy set up, management and use of a room for education, training or similar.

The set-up is tailored around the following room modes:
- Local Presenter (the presenter is in the room)
- Remote Presenter (the presenter is calling in)
- Discussions (for discussions between different sites with a local presenter in the room)

The briefing room is available as a room type template, which means that the required configurations are pushed automatically to the video system when you select the template.

In order for these configurations to match the room, it is important that the room is set up correctly, and that cameras and displays are connected exactly as specified in this chapter.

Products supporting Briefing room

Codecs:
- SX80
- Codec Pro

Integrated video systems:
- MX700, MX800 Single, MX800 Dual
- Room 70 Single G2, Room 70 Dual G2

Required equipment
- Three displays (Presentation display, Remote presenter display, and Remote audience display)
- Two cameras (Audience camera and Presenter camera)
- Microphones
- Speakers
- Touch 10 user interface.

* The illustration shows a codec with Speaker Track 60 camera as audience camera. The same principle applies also to the supported integrated systems, and other supported codec and camera combinations.
Room modes

The set-up is tailored around the following pre-defined room modes:

- **Local Presenter mode**
  - The presenter is in the room.
  - The local presenter mode also covers the case when someone in the local audience asks a question (Q&A).

- **Remote Presenter mode**
  - The presenter is calling in.

- **Discussion mode**
  - For discussions between different sites with a local presenter in the room.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Local Presenter mode</th>
<th>Remote Presenter mode</th>
<th>Discussion mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Video sent to the far end</strong></td>
<td>Sends video from the Presenter camera Q&amp;A: Sends split-screen video from the Presenter camera and the person asking the question (Audience camera)</td>
<td>Sends video from the Audience camera</td>
<td>Sends video from the Audience camera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Remote presenter display</strong></td>
<td>Shows the presentation</td>
<td>Shows the presenter that is calling in, and other remote sites (you can decide the layout locally)</td>
<td>Shows the remote sites that are part of the discussion (you can decide the layout locally)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presentation display</strong></td>
<td>Shows the presentation</td>
<td>Shows the presentation</td>
<td>Shows the presentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Remote audience display</strong></td>
<td>Shows the remote participants that are calling in from different sites</td>
<td>Shows the presentation</td>
<td>Shows the presentation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If there is no presentation, nothing will be shown on the corresponding screens (gray).

* The illustrations show a codec with Speaker Track 60 camera as audience camera. The same principle applies also to the supported integrated systems, and other supported codec and camera combinations.
Briefing room set-up (page 3 of 6)

Room arrangement examples

Recommendation

- **Remote presenter display**: 1st screen, placed at front. For integrated systems, this is its (left) screen.
- **Presentation display**: 2nd screen, placed at front. For integrated systems with two screens, this is its right screen.
- **Remote audience display**: 3rd screen, placed further back.
- **Audience camera**: The integrated camera for systems that have that, or a Cisco Quad Camera or Cisco TelePresence SpeakerTrack 60 camera assembly. It is also possible to use a camera without speaker tracking capabilities.
- **Presenter camera**: Cisco TelePresence Precision 60 with presenter tracking enabled.
- **Microphones**: Cisco TelePresence Ceiling Microphone for good coverage of the room. Other microphone solutions can also be used.
- **Speakers**: The integrated speakers for systems that have that, or good quality stereo speakers placed next to the Presentation display and the Remote presenter display.
Briefing room set-up (page 4 of 6)

Connect cables

It is very important to connect the cameras and monitors to the video system as illustrated; otherwise the configuration that is pushed to the video system when selecting the Briefing room type template will not match your actual set-up.

You only need to connect the external monitors and cameras; keep all the other connectors, including the integrated cameras and displays as first installed.

1 If the video system has a single camera, only camera input 1 is used.

2 Cisco TelePresence Precision 60 need Ethernet connection to the codec. We recommend that you add an Ethernet switch to Network port 2 as illustrated. Do not connect the Ethernet switch to Network port 1, which is reserved for the LAN connection.
Configure the video system

1. Connect cameras and screens as described on the previous page.

2. It is important that the Presenter camera is not being shared. Use the Touch interface to stop sharing the video from the Presenter camera.

3. Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Setup > Configurations.

4. Go to the Video > Input > Connector 3 section, and set the following:
   - InputSourceType: camera
   - PresentationSelection: Manual
   - Quality: Motion
   - Visibility: Never
   - CameraControl Mode: On
   
   Click Save for the changes to take effect.

5. Set up PresenterTrack for the Presenter camera, see the ► Set up the PresenterTrack feature chapter.

6. Navigate to Setup > Room Types in the web interface.

7. Click the Briefing thumbnail to push the corresponding configuration to the video system.

Change room mode while in a conference

Switching between room modes (Local Presenter, Remote Presenter, Discussions), which implies that camera input sources, and remote and local screen layouts, are changed, can be done in two ways:

- Automatically, based on who is speaking and whether a local presenter are present on stage.
- Manually, using the buttons on the Touch user interface.

Choose between automatic or manual switching between room modes

1. Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Setup > Configuration.

2. Use the Cameras > PresenterTrack > PresenterDetectedStatus setting to determine whether to enable (default) or disable automatic switching between Local Presenter and Remote Presenter modes. The room mode will not change automatically if the current mode is Discussions.

Switch room modes automatically

Only supported with Cisco TelePresence Precision 60 as Presenter camera, and the PresenterTrack feature enabled (Cameras PresenterTrack Enabled set to True).

Automatic switching implies:

- The system switches to Local Presenter mode when a person is detected in the PresenterTrack trigger zone.
- The system switches to Remote Presenter mode when the local presenter, who is tracked, leaves the stage.
- If someone in the local audience asks a question, while the system is in Local Presenter mode, the system sends split-screen video of both the presenter and the person asking the question. This requires Cisco TelePresence SpeakerTrack 60 or Cisco Webex Quad Camera as Audience camera, and that speaker tracking is switched on.

Switch to another room mode manually

While in a conference, you can switch to another mode using the Touch controller.

1. Tap Briefing Room on the Touch controller.

2. Tap the mode you want to change to.
Briefing room set-up (page 6 of 6)

Limitations
These features are not supported when using Briefing Room:
• MultiSite (embedded multipoint switch)
• H.265 video encoding
• Content sharing to Proximity clients
• Directional audio
• Snap to Whiteboard
• Active control (selection of layouts from CMS)
Classroom set-up (page 1 of 5)

The Classroom set-up is designed to provide easy set up, management and use of a room for education, training or similar.

The Classroom is available as a room type template, which means that the required configurations are pushed automatically to the video system when you select the template.

In order for these configurations to match the room, it is important that the room is set up correctly, and that the cameras are connected exactly as specified in this chapter.

Required equipment

- One or more screens (configurable).
- Two cameras (Audience camera and Presenter camera)
- Microphones
- Speakers
- Touch 10 user interface.

Classroom versus Briefing Room set-up

The Classroom set-up is more flexible than the Briefing room set-up, which is available for SX80, Codec Pro, MX700, MX800, and Room 70 G2, when it comes to the number of screens and how the layout is distributed on the screens.

In Classroom you can use any number of screens, as long as it is supported by the video system, typically two or three. You must use the video monitor settings to configure the distribution of layouts on the screens, if the default behavior does not fulfill your requirements.

In Briefing room you have to use three screens, and the layouts on the screens are pre-configured (and fixed) to match that particular scenario.

Room modes

The Classroom set-up is tailored around the following pre-defined room modes: Local Presenter, Remote Presenter, and Discussion.

Local Presenter mode

- The presenter is in the room.
- The local presenter mode also covers the case when someone in the local audience asks a question (Q&A).
- Sends video from the Presenter camera to the far end.
- Q&A: Sends split-screen video from the Presenter camera and the person asking the question (Audience camera) to the far end.

Remote Presenter mode

- The presenter is calling in.
- Sends video from the Audience camera to the far end

Discussion mode

- For discussions between different sites with a local presenter in the room.
- Sends video from the Audience camera to the far end

Products supporting Classroom

Codecs:
- SX80, Codec Pro, Codec Plus
Integrated video systems:
- MX700, MX800 Single, MX800 Dual
- Room 55 Dual
- Room 70 Single, Room 70 Dual
- Room 70 Single G2, Room 70 Dual G2
Classroom set-up (page 2 of 5)

Room arrangement examples

Recommendation

**Audience camera:**
- The integrated camera for systems that have that, or a Cisco Quad Camera or Cisco TelePresence SpeakerTrack 60 camera assembly. In general we recommend a camera with speaker tracking, but it is also possible to use a camera without speaker tracking capabilities.

**Presenter camera:**
- Cisco TelePresence Precision 60 with presenter tracking enabled.

**Microphones:**
- Cisco TelePresence Ceiling Microphone for good coverage of the room. Other microphone solutions can also be used.

**Speakers:**
- The integrated speakers for systems that have that, or good quality stereo speakers placed next to the main screen in the front of the room.

**Screens:**
- You can use one or more screens (the maximum number of screens are determined by the video system).
- For most set-ups, Cisco recommends that you use two screens (or more): A main screen placed at the front of the room, and a second screen on the side or at the back, so that the local presenter can see the remote audience.
Classroom set-up (page 3 of 5)

Connect cables

It is important to connect the cameras to the video system as illustrated; otherwise the configuration that is pushed to the video system when selecting the Classroom room type template will not match your actual set-up.

You only need to connect the external screens and cameras; keep all the other connectors, including the integrated cameras and screens as first installed.

1 If the video system has a single camera, only camera input 1 is used.
2 You may connect the Presenter camera to HDMI input 2 instead of input 3, if input 2 is available.
3 Cisco TelePresence Precision 60 need Ethernet connection to the codec. We recommend that you add an Ethernet switch to Network port 2 as illustrated. Do not connect the Ethernet switch to Network port 1, which is reserved for the LAN connection.
Configure the video system

1. Connect cameras and screens as described on the previous page.

2. It is important that the Presenter camera is not being shared. Use the Touch interface to stop sharing the video from the Presenter camera.

3. Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Setup > Configurations.

4. Go to the Video > Input > Connector 3 section, and set the following:
   - InputSourceType: camera
   - PresentationSelection: Manual
   - Quality: Motion
   - Visibility: Never
   - CameraControl Mode: On

5. Set up PresenterTrack for the Presenter camera, see the Set up the PresenterTrack feature chapter.

6. If the default screen and layout behavior does not suit your set-up, you must configure the screens and layouts using the following settings:
   - Video > Monitors: Defines the number of different layouts in your room set-up.
   - Video > Output > Connector n > MonitorRole: Defines which layout each screen will get. Screens with different monitor roles get different layouts.

Refer to the chapter about connecting monitors for details.

7. Navigate to Setup > Room Types in the web interface.

8. Click the Classroom thumbnail to push the corresponding configuration to the video system.

Change room mode while in a conference

Switching between room modes (Local Presenter, Remote Presenter, Discussions), which implies that camera input sources, and remote and local screen layouts, are changed, can be done in two ways:

- Automatically, based on who is speaking and whether a local presenter are present on stage.
- Manually, using the buttons on the Touch user interface.

Choose between automatic or manual switching between room modes

1. Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Setup > Configuration.

2. Use the Cameras > PresenterTrack > PresenterDetectedStatus setting to determine whether to enable (default) or disable automatic switching between Local Presenter and Remote Presenter modes. The room mode will not change automatically if the current mode is Discussions.

Switch room modes automatically

Only supported with Cisco TelePresence Precision 60 as Presenter camera, and the PresenterTrack feature enabled (Cameras PresenterTrack Enabled set to True).

Automatic switching implies:

- The system switches to Local Presenter mode when a person is detected in the PresenterTrack trigger zone.
- The system switches to Remote Presenter mode when the local presenter, who is tracked, leaves the stage.
- If someone in the local audience asks a question, while the system is in Local Presenter mode, the system sends split-screen video of both the presenter and the person asking the question. This requires Cisco TelePresence SpeakerTrack 60 or Cisco Webex Quad Camera as Audience camera, and that speaker tracking is switched on.

Switch to another room mode manually

While in a conference, you can switch to another mode using the Touch controller.

1. Tap Classroom on the Touch controller.

2. Tap the mode you want to change to.
Classroom set-up (page 5 of 5)

Limitations

These features are not supported when using Classroom:

- MultiSite (embedded multipoint switch)
- H.265 video encoding
- Content sharing to Proximity clients
- Directional audio
- Snap to Whiteboard
Test the loudspeaker connections (page 1 of 2)

Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Integration > Developer API.

We have provided a speaker check tool that you can run to verify that the loudspeakers are correctly connected.

You must be in the same room as the video system when you test the loudspeaker connections.

Run the speaker check

1. Enter the following command in the Execute API commands and configurations text area:

   xCommand Audio SpeakerCheck
   MeasurementLength: <number of seconds>
   Volume: <test-signal volume>

   If you leave out the MeasurementLength and Volume parameters, the test signal is emitted for 1 second from each speaker, and the volume is 1.

2. Click Execute.

   The speaker check will now run, and a test signal will be emitted from each speaker, in sequence from left to right.

3. Listen for the test signals.

   If one or more speakers do not make a sound, or the sequence is not strictly from left to right, you have to reconnect the loudspeaker cables and run the speaker check again.

Loudspeakers

It is crucial for the conferencing experience that the video system's loudspeakers are correctly connected to the embedded codec.

Correct cabling ensures that sound meant to be coming from the right loudspeakers actually comes from the right speakers, and the sound meant to be coming from the left loudspeakers actually comes from the left speakers. If the speaker cables are incorrectly connected this will not take place.

If the speaker check reveals any issues, you must reconnect the cables.

How to reconnect cables

Check the Installation Guide for the product for all details.

1. Remove the video system's upper textile grille. It snaps to magnets.

2. Unscrew the screw that fastens the loudspeaker (Torx T20). Then, release the speaker gently from its peg.

3. Disconnect the cable that is connected incorrectly, and connect the correct cable.

   The cables are marked with a number. Check the next page to see which cable should be connected to which loudspeaker.

* Syntax and semantics are explained in the API guide for the video system.
Test the loudspeaker connections (page 2 of 2)

Find the correct cable for each loudspeaker

The numbers that are shown in the illustrations are printed on the loudspeaker cables.
Using extra loudspeakers and local reinforcement

With MX700, MX800 Single and MX800 Dual extra loudspeakers are required to enable local reinforcement functionality.

Configuration example

The configuration example describes a setup with the integrated loudspeakers (HDMI) as main loudspeakers, the extra loudspeakers on Line Output 1 and 2, and local presenters' microphones on Microphone Input 1 and 2.

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to **Setup > Configuration**, to find the settings referred below.

1. Set the delay (ms) for the extra loudspeakers:
   - Audio > Output > Line 1 > Delay > DelayMs: <0..290>
   - Audio > Output > Line 2 > Delay > DelayMs: <0..290>

   The delay can vary based on where in the room the loudspeakers are placed. To calculate the delay, see the *Using Extra Loudspeakers and Local Reinforcement* guide.

2. Switch on reinforcement for the microphones that the local presenters will use:
   - Audio > MicrophoneReinforcement > Input > Microphone 1 Mode: On
   - Audio > MicrophoneReinforcement > Input > Microphone 2 Mode: On

3. Switch on reinforcement for the extra loudspeakers:
   - Audio > MicrophoneReinforcement > Output > Line 1 > Mode: On
   - Audio > MicrophoneReinforcement > Output > Line 2 > Mode: On

4. Set the amplification of the microphone signal from the local presenters to the extra loudspeakers:
   - Audio > MicrophoneReinforcement > Gain: <-54..15>

   Adjust the gain in small steps and make sure that the final setting is well below the feeding level.

Additional resources

We recommend reading the *Using Extra Loudspeakers and Local Reinforcement* guide for a comprehensive description and best practices for the solution.

Connect the Touch 10 controller (page 1 of 4)

Touch 10 must either be directly connected to the video system as described on this page, or paired to the video system via the network (LAN) as described on the next page. The latter is referred to as remote pairing.

Connect Touch 10 directly to the video system

Connect Touch 10 to the video system's PoE injector as illustrated.

Touch 10 set-up

Once Touch 10 is connected to power, the set-up procedure begins. Follow the instructions on screen.

If Touch 10 needs software upgrade, new software will be downloaded from the video system and installed on the unit automatically as part of the set-up procedure. Touch 10 restarts after the upgrade.

The video system's name or address is displayed in the status bar when Touch 10 is successfully connected to the video system.
Connect the Touch 10 controller (page 2 of 4)

Connect Touch 10 to the video system via the network (LAN)

Connect Touch 10 and the video system to network wall sockets or to a network switch as illustrated.

Touch 10 set-up

Once Touch 10 is connected to power, the set-up procedure begins. Follow the instructions on screen.

When the Select a room system screen appears, note the following:

- A list of video systems signalling that they are available for paring will show up on the screen. Tap the name of the video system you want to pair with.

Note that the following must be fulfilled for a video system to show up in the list:

- The video system and Touch 10 must be on the same subnet.
- The video system must have been restarted within the last 10 minutes. If the video system does not appear in the list, try restarting it.

- If the video system does not appear in the list of available systems, enter its IP address or hostname in the input field. Tap Connect.

- You have to log in with username and passphrase for the paring process to commence. Tap Login.

A user with the USER role is sufficient; you do not need the ADMIN role to perform this task.

Read more about how to create a user account and assign a role to it in the ► User administration chapter.

If Touch 10 needs software upgrade, new software will be downloaded from the video system and installed on the unit automatically as part of the set-up procedure. Touch 10 restarts after the upgrade.

Contact information

The video system’s name or address is displayed in the status bar when Touch 10 is successfully paired to the video system.

The Ethernet connector is at the rear of Touch 10.

1 If the network infrastructure provides Power over Ethernet (PoE), you do not need a PoE injector; Touch 10 should be connected directly to the wall socket (Ethernet switch) with a PoE rated Ethernet cable.

For safety, the PoE source must be in the same building as Touch 10. The PoE rated Ethernet cable can be up to 100m (330 ft).
Connect the Touch 10 controller (page 3 of 4)

Cisco Touch 10 physical interface

This is the new version of the Touch 10 controller launched late 2017. It has the same functionality as the previous version, but has a slightly different physical interface. The new device is identified by the logo on front, and fewer connectors at the back.

- Touch screen
- Adjustable support to accommodate individual ergonomic needs
- Sound bar for audio adjustment
- Audio mute
- Factory reset (behind cover)
- Micro-USB: for maintenance only (behind cover)
- Ethernet with PoE: for power and Ethernet
Connect the Touch 10 controller (page 4 of 4)

Cisco TelePresence Touch 10 physical interface

See next page for a newer version of the Touch 10 controller.
Connect the ISDN Link

The ISDN Link enables a video system to use ISDN lines for connectivity, and enables both video calls and telephone calls over the PSTN (Public Switched Telephone Network).

ISDN Link support ISDN BRI, ISDN PRI and V.35. ISDN can be used in addition to regular IP connectivity for SIP or H.323 calls, or without any IP infrastructure.

ISDN Link is managed from the video systems web interface. Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Setup > Peripherals.

Requirements:
- The ISDN Link must be running IL1.1.7 software or later
- The video system (codec) must be running CE9.3 software or later. The ISDN Link must be re-paired with the video system after the video system has been converted from TC software to CE software.
- The video endpoint must have IPv6 enabled in the web interface or API in order to communicate with the ISDN Link
- Observe the network topology in the ISDN Link Installation Guide in order to guarantee a successful installation
- The video system and ISDN Link must be on the same subnet. If the endpoint or ISDN Link are assigned new IP addresses they will only remain paired as long as they are kept in the same subnet.

Limitations:
- Video systems that are registered to the Cisco Webex cloud service are not able to use ISDN Link.

Setup and configuration

When converting the video system from TC (TC6 or later) to CE software (CE9.3 or later) the ISDN Link will automatically be unpaired due to security reasons.

Chapter 4

Maintenance
Upgrade the system software (page 1 of 2)

Upgrading from TC to CE software

CE software is the evolution of TC software. We recommend that you upgrade to TC7.3.6 or later before you upgrade to CE software.

It is important that you read about upgrade requirements and functionality changes before you upgrade to CE software. Also check that your environment supports the changes. We recommend reading the Software Release Notes carefully.

If you don’t take into account these considerations, upgrading to CE can leave you with a non-functioning deployment that requires you to downgrade.

Upgrading from CE8 to CE9

The MultiStream feature with Cisco TelePresence Server is deprecated in CE9.

Also, some features that were available from the Touch controller in CE8, are not available in the first CE9 releases. Read the Software Release Notes for details before you upgrade.

---

* CE software does not support the following features and products:
  - MultiWay conferencing
  - CTMS conferencing
  - MediaNet
  - Displays that do not support 16:9 or 16:10 resolution
  - Custom video layouts using TC Console.
Upgrade the system software (page 2 of 2)

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Maintenance > Software Upgrade.

Download new software
For software download, go to the Cisco Download Software web page, and select your product:
► https://software.cisco.com/download/home

Each software version has a unique file name. The format of the file name is “s52020ce9_5_x.pkg”.

Software release notes
For a complete overview of the news and changes, we recommend reading the Software Release Notes (CE9).


Install new software
Download the appropriate software package and store it on your computer. This is a .pkg file. Don’t change the file name.

1. Click Browse... and find the .pkg file that contains the new software.
   The software version will be detected and shown.
2. Click Install software to start the installation process.

The complete installation normally take no longer than 15 minutes. You can follow the progress on the web page. The video system restarts automatically after the installation.

You must sign in anew in order to continue working with the web interface after the restart.

About software versions
This video conference system is using CE software. The version described in this document is CE9.5.x.
Add option keys

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Maintenance > Option Keys.
You see a list of all option keys, also the ones that are not installed on your video system.
Contact your Cisco representative for information about how to get option keys for the uninstalled options.

About option keys
Your video system may or may not have one or more software options installed. In order to activate the optional functionality, the corresponding option key must be present on the video system.
Each video system has unique option keys.
Option keys are not deleted when performing a software upgrade or factory reset, so they need to be added only once.

The video system's serial number
You need the video system’s serial number when ordering an option key.

Add an option key
1. Enter an Option Key in the text input field.
2. Click Add option key.
If you want to add more than one option key, repeat these steps for all keys.
System status

System information overview
Sign in to the web interface to see the System Information page.
This page shows the product type, system name and basic information about the hardware, software, installed options and network address. Registration status for the video networks (SIP and H.323) is included, as well as the number/URI to use when making a call to the system.

Detailed system status
Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Setup > Status in order to find more detailed status information.*

Search for a status entry
Enter as many letters as needed in the search field. All entries that contain these letters are shown in the right pane. Entries that have these letters in their value space are also shown.

Select a category and navigate to the correct status
The system status is grouped in categories. Choose a category in the left pane to show the related status to the right.

* The status shown in the illustration serve as an example. The status of your system may be different.
Run diagnostics

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to **Maintenance > Diagnostics**.

The diagnostics page lists the status for some common sources of errors.

Errors and critical issues are clearly marked in red color; warnings are yellow.

---

* The messages shown in the illustration serve as examples. Your system may show other information.
Download log files

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Maintenance > System Logs.

Download all log files
Click Download logs archive... and follow the instructions.
An anonymized call history is included in the log files by default.
Use the drop down list if you want to exclude the call history from the log files, or if you want to include the full call history (non-anonymous caller/callee).

Open/save one log file
Click the file name to open the log file in the web browser; right click to save the file on the computer.

Start extended logging
Click Start extended logging...
Extended logging lasts for 3 or 10 minutes, depending on whether full capture of network traffic is included or not.
Click Stop extended logging if you want to stop the extended logging before it times out.
As default, the network traffic is not captured. Use the drop down menu if you want to include partial or full capture of network traffic.

Refresh a log file list
Click the refresh button for Current logs or Historical logs to update the corresponding lists.

About log files
The log files are Cisco specific debug files which may be requested by the Cisco support organization if you need technical support.
The current log files are time stamped event log files.
All current log files are archived in a time stamped historical log file each time the video system restarts. If the maximum number of historical log files is reached, the oldest one will be overwritten.
Extended logging mode
Extended logging mode may be switched on to help diagnose network issues and problems during call setup. While in this mode more information is stored in the log files.
Extended logging uses more of the video system’s resources, and may cause the video system to under-perform. Only use extended logging mode when you are troubleshooting an issue.
Create a remote support user


⚠️ The remote support user should only be enabled for troubleshooting reasons when instructed by Cisco TAC.

Create remote support user

1. Click Create user.
2. Open a case with Cisco TAC.
3. Copy the text in the Token field and send it to Cisco TAC.
4. Cisco TAC will generate a password.

The remote support user is valid for seven days, or until it is deleted.

About the remote support user

In cases where you need to diagnose problems on the video system you can create a remote support user.

The remote support user is granted read access to the system and has access to a limited set of commands that can aid troubleshooting.

You will need assistance from Cisco Technical Assistance Center (TAC) to acquire the password for the remote support user.

Delete remote support user

Click Delete user.
Backup and restore configurations and custom elements

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Maintenance > Backup and Restore.

You can include custom elements as well as configurations in a backup file (zip-format). You can choose which of the following elements to include in the bundle:

- Branding images
- Macros
- Favorites
- Sign-in banner
- In-room control panels
- Configurations/settings (all or a sub-set)

The backup file can either be restored manually from the video system’s web interface, or you can generalize the backup bundle so that it can be provisioned across multiple video systems, for example using Cisco UCM or TMS (see the next chapters).

Create a backup file

1. Open the Create backup tab.
2. Select the elements you want to include in the backup file. Elements that currently don’t exist on the video system are greyed out.
3. Select which settings - if any - you want to include in the backup file. Note the following:
   - As default, all settings are included in the backup file.
   - You can remove one or more settings manually by deleting them from the list on the web page.
   - If you want to remove all settings that are specific to one video system, click Remove system-specific configurations.
     This is useful if you are going to restore the backup bundle on other video systems.
4. Click Download backup to store the elements in a zip-file on your computer.

Restore a backup file

1. Choose the Restore backup tab.
2. Click Browse... and find the backup file you want to restore. All settings and elements in the backup file will be applied.
3. Click Upload file to apply the backup. Some settings may require that you restart the video system before they take effect.

Additional information

Restoring macros

If a backup file that contains macros is restored on a video system the following applies:

- The macro runtime is started or restarted.
- The macros are automatically activated (started).

Restoring branding images

If a backup bundle contains branding images, the UserInterface Wallpaper setting is automatically set to Auto. This means that the branding images will automatically be displayed, possibly replacing a custom wallpaper.

The backup file

The backup file is a zip-file that contains several files. It is important that the files are at the top level within the zip-file, and not include in a folder.
CUCM provisioning of custom elements

A backup file, as described in the Backup and restore configurations and custom elements chapter, can be used as a customization template for multiple video systems.

The customization template (backup file) may be hosted on either:
- the CUCM TFTP file service, or
- a custom web server that can be reached by the video systems on HTTP or HTTPS.

When a video system get information from CUCM (Cisco Unified Communications Manager) about the name and location of a customization template, the video system will contact the server, download the file, and restore the custom elements.

Upload a customization template to the TFTP file server
1. Sign in to Cisco Unified OS Administration.
2. Navigate to Software Upgrades > TFTP File Management.
3. Click Upload File. Enter the name and path of the customization template in the input field.
4. Click Upload File.

Add customization provisioning information for each video system
1. Sign in to Cisco Unified CM Administration.
2. Navigate to Device > Phone.
3. Fill in the Customization Provisioning fields in the product specific configuration section of the relevant devices:
   - Customization File: The customization template file name (for example: backup.zip) *
   - Customization Hash Type: SHA512
   - Customization Hash: The SHA512 checksum for the customization template.

   If these fields are not present, you must install a newer Device Package on CUCM.

4. Click Save and Apply Config to push the configuration to the video systems.

* If not using the TFTP Service, you must enter the complete URI for the customization template: <hostname>:<portnumber>/<path-and-filename>

For example:
- http://host:6970/backup.zip, or
- https://host:6971/backup.zip

Tip! You can find the SHA512 checksum of a file by restoring it to a video system using its web interface.

1. Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Maintenance > Backup and Restore.
2. Choose the Restore backup tab.
3. Click Browse... and find the file you want to calculate the checksum for. Then you can see the SHA512 checksum at the bottom of the page.

CUCM documentation
TMS provisioning of custom elements

A backup file, as described in the Backup and restore configurations and custom elements chapter, can be used as a customization template for multiple video systems.

The backup file must be hosted on a custom web server that can be reached by the video systems on HTTP or HTTPS.

When a video system get information from TMS (TelePresence Management Suite) about the name and location of the backup file, the video system will contact the server, download the file, and restore the custom elements.

Create and apply a configuration template

1. Create a configurations template.
2. Add a custom command containing the following XML string in the configuration template:
   ```xml
   <Command>
   <Provisioning>
   <Service>
   <Fetch>
   <URL>web-server-address</URL>
   <Checksum>checksum</Checksum>
   <Origin>origin</Origin>
   </Fetch>
   </Service>
   </Provisioning>
   </Command>
   ``
   
   where
   
   - **web-server-address**: The URI to the backup file (for example, http://host/backup.zip).
   - **checksum**: The SHA512 checksum of the backup file.
   - **origin**: Provisioning

3. Select the video systems you want to push the configuration template to, and click Set on systems.

Read the Cisco TMS administrator guide for details how to create TMS configurations templates and make custom commands.

SHA512 checksum

Tip! You can find the SHA512 checksum of a file by restoring it to a video system using its web interface.

1. Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Maintenance > Backup and Restore.
2. Choose the Restore backup tab.
3. Click Browse... and find the file you want to calculate the checksum for. Then you can see the SHA512 checksum at the bottom of the page.

* If not setting this parameter to Provisioning, also configurations that are part of the backup file will be pushed to the video system. If the backup file contains configurations that are specific to one video system, for example static IP addresses, system name, and contact information, you may and up with video systems that you cannot reach.
Revert to the previously used software image

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Maintenance > System Recovery.

We recommend you to back up the log files, configurations, and custom elements of the video system before you swap to the previously used software image.

Back up log files, configurations and custom elements

1. Select the Backup tab.
2. Click Download logs and follow the instructions to save the log files on your computer.
3. Click Download backup and follow the instructions to save the backup bundle on your computer.

Revert to the previously used software image

Only administrators, or when in contact with Cisco technical support, should perform this procedure.

1. Select the Software Recovery Swap tab.
2. Click Switch to software: cex.y.z..., where x.y.z indicates the software version.
3. Click Yes to confirm your choice, or Cancel if you have changed your mind.

Wait while the system resets. The system restarts automatically when finished. This procedure may take a few minutes.

About the previously used software image

If there is a severe problem with the video system, switching to the previously used software image may help solving the problem.

If the system has not been factory reset since the last software upgrade, the previously used software image still resides on the system. You do not have to download the software again.
If there is a severe problem with the video system, the last resort may be to reset it to its default factory settings.

⚠️ It is not possible to undo a factory reset.

Always consider reverting to the previously used software image before performing a factory reset. In many situations this will recover the system. Read about software swapping in the Revert to the previously used software image chapter.

We recommend that you use the web interface or user interface to factory reset the video system. If these interfaces are not available, use the reset pin-hole.

A factory reset implies:
- Call logs are deleted.
- Passphrases are reset to default.
- All system parameters are reset to default values.
- All files that have been uploaded to the system are deleted. This includes, but is not limited to, custom wallpaper, certificates, and favorites lists.
- The previous (inactive) software image is deleted.
- Option keys are not affected.

The video system restarts automatically after the factory reset. It is using the same software image as before.

We recommend that you back up the log files, configurations, and custom elements of the video system before you perform a factory reset; otherwise these data will be lost.
**Factory reset the video system** (page 2 of 3)

### Factory reset using the web interface

We recommend that you back up the log files and configuration of the video system before you continue with the factory reset.

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to *Maintenance > System Recovery*.

1. Select the *Factory Reset* tab, and read the provided information carefully.
2. Click *Perform a factory reset*...
3. Click *Yes* to confirm your choice, or *Cancel* if you have changed your mind.
4. Wait while the video system reverts to the default factory settings. When finished, the video system restarts automatically. This may take a few minutes.

When the system has been successfully reset to factory settings, the Setup assistant starts with the *Welcome* screen.

### Factory reset from the user interface

We recommend that you back up the log files and configuration of the video system before you continue with the factory reset.

1. Select the contact information in the upper left corner of the user interface.
2. Select *Settings*.
3. Select *Factory reset*.
4. Select *Reset* to confirm your choice, or *Back* if you have changed your mind.
5. Wait while the video system reverts to the default factory settings. When finished, the video system restarts automatically. This may take a few minutes.

When the system has been successfully reset to factory settings, the Setup assistant starts with the *Welcome* screen.

### Back up log files, configurations, and custom elements

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to *Maintenance > System Recovery*.

**Back up log files, configurations, and custom element**

1. Select the *Backup* tab.
2. Click *Download logs* and follow the instructions to save the log files on your computer.
3. Click *Download backup* and follow the instructions to save the backup bundle on your computer.
Factory reset the video system (page 3 of 3)

Factory reset using the reset button

We recommend that you back up the log files and configuration of the video system before you continue with the factory reset.

1. Remove the left side cover of the video system to get access to the codec connector panel. The cover snaps to magnets.

2. Use a paper clip (or similar) to press and hold the recessed reset button until the screen turns black (approximately 10 seconds). Then release the button.

3. Wait while the video system reverts to the default factory settings. When finished, the video system restarts automatically. This may take a few minutes. When the system has been successfully reset to factory settings, the Setup assistant starts with the Welcome screen.
Factory reset Cisco Touch 10

This chapter applies to the new Touch 10 controller that was launched late 2017 (Cisco Touch 10). This device is identified by the logo on front, and fewer connectors at the back. See the next page for the older version.

In an error situation it may be required to factory reset the Touch controller to recover connectivity. This should be done only when in contact with the Cisco support organization.

When factory resetting the Touch controller the pairing information is lost, and the Touch itself (not the video system) is reverted to factory defaults.

It is not possible to undo a factory reset.

1. Open the small cover at the rear to find the reset button.
2. Press and hold the reset button until the mute button at the front starts blinking (approximately 5 seconds). Then release the button.
   Touch 10 automatically reverts to the default factory settings and restarts.
   If Touch 10 is directly connected to the video system it receives a new configuration automatically from the video system.
   If Touch 10 is connected via LAN the device must be paired to the video system anew. When successfully paired it receives a new configuration automatically from the video system.

About pairing and how to connect Touch 10 to the video system

In order to use the Touch 10 controller, Touch 10 must either be directly connected to the codec, or paired to the codec via LAN. The latter is referred to as remote pairing.

Read about pairing and how to connect Touch 10 to the video system in the Connect the Touch 10 controller chapter.
Factory reset Cisco TelePresence Touch 10

In an error situation it may be required to factory reset the Touch controller to recover connectivity. This should be done only when in contact with the Cisco support organization.

When factory resetting the Touch controller the pairing information is lost, and the Touch itself (not the video system) is reverted to factory defaults.

1. Locate the *Mute* and *Volume down* buttons.
2. Press and hold the *Mute* button until it starts blinking (red and green). It takes approximately 10 seconds.
3. Press the *Volume down* button twice.

   Touch 10 automatically reverts to the default factory settings and restarts.

   If Touch 10 is directly connected to the video system it receives a new configuration automatically from the video system.

   If Touch 10 is connected via LAN the device must be paired to the video system anew. When successfully paired it receives a new configuration automatically from the video system.

⚠️ It is not possible to undo a factory reset.

About pairing and how to connect Touch 10 to the video system

In order to use the Touch 10 controller, Touch 10 must either be directly connected to the codec, or paired to the codec via LAN. The latter is referred to as remote pairing.

Read about pairing and how to connect Touch 10 to the video system in the ▶️ Connect the Touch 10 controller chapter.
Capture user interface screenshots

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Maintenance > User Interface Screenshots.

About user interface screenshots
You can capture screenshots both of a Touch controller that is connected to the video system, and of the on-screen display (menus, indicators and messages on the main display).

Capture a screenshot
Click Take screenshot of Touch Panel to capture a screenshot of the Touch controller, or click Take screenshot of OSD to capture a screenshot of the on-screen display.

The screenshot displays in the area below the buttons. It may take up to 30 seconds before the screenshot is ready.

All captured snapshots are included in the list above the buttons. Click the screenshot ID to display the image.

Delete screenshots
If you want to delete all screenshots, click Remove all.
To delete just one screenshot, click the button for that screenshot.
Chapter 5

System settings
Overview of the system settings

In the following pages you will find a complete list of the system settings which are configured from the Setup > Configuration page on the web interface.

Open a web browser and enter the IP address of the video system then sign in.

How to find the IP address

1. Select the contact information in the upper left corner of the user interface.
2. Select Settings, followed by About this device.
Logging settings

Logging External Mode ......................................................... 147
Logging External Protocol ................................................. 147
Logging External Server Address .................................... 147
Logging External Server Port ............................................. 147
Logging Mode ................................................................ 147

Macros settings ................................................................ 148

Macros AutoStart ............................................................ 148
Macros Mode .................................................................. 148

Network settings ............................................................... 149

Network [1..1] DNS DNSSEC Mode .................................. 149
Network [1..1] DNS Domain Name .................................... 149
Network [1..1] DNS Server [1..3] Address ....................... 149
Network [1..1] IEEE8021X AnonymousIdentity .............. 150
Network [1..1] IEEE8021X Eap Md5 ................................. 150
Network [1..1] IEEE8021X Eap Peap ............................... 151
Network [1..1] IEEE8021X Eap Tls ................................. 151
Network [1..1] IEEE8021X Eap Tls ................................. 151
Network [1..1] IEEE8021X Identity ................................... 150
Network [1..1] IEEE8021X Mode ....................................... 149
Network [1..1] IEEE8021X Password ............................. 150
Network [1..1] IEEE8021X TlsVerify ............................... 149
Network [1..1] IEEE8021X UseClientCertificate .............. 150
Network [1..1] IPStack ...................................................... 151
Network [1..1] IPv4 Address ............................................. 151
Network [1..1] IPv4 Assignment ....................................... 151
Network [1..1] IPv4 Gateway ........................................... 151
Network [1..1] IPv4 SubnetMask ...................................... 152
Network [1..1] IPv6 Address ........................................... 152
Network [1..1] IPv6 Assignment ....................................... 152
Network [1..1] IPv6 DHCPOptions ................................. 152
Network [1..1] IPv6 Gateway ........................................... 152
Network [1..1] MTU .......................................................... 153
Network [1..1] QoS DiffServ Audio ................................. 153
Network [1..1] QoS DiffServ Data .................................... 154
Network [1..1] QoS DiffServ ICMPv6 .............................. 154

Network [1..1] QoS DiffServ NTP ...................................... 154
Network [1..1] QoS DiffServ Signalling .......................... 154
Network [1..1] QoS DiffServ Video .................................. 153
Network [1..1] QoS Mode ................................................ 153
Network [1..1] RemoteAccess Allow .............................. 155
Network [1..1] Speed ....................................................... 155
Network [1..1] TrafficControl Mode ............................... 155
Network [1..1] VLAN Voice Mode ................................. 155
Network [1..1] VLAN Voice VlanId ............................... 155

NetworkServices settings ............................................... 156

NetworkServices CDP Mode ........................................... 156
NetworkServices H323 Mode .......................................... 156
NetworkServices HTTP Mode ......................................... 156
NetworkServices HTTP Proxy LoginName ...................... 156
NetworkServices HTTP Proxy Mode ............................ 157
NetworkServices HTTP Proxy PACUrl ......................... 157
NetworkServices HTTP Proxy Password ....................... 157
NetworkServices HTTP Proxy Url ............................... 157
NetworkServices HTTPS OCSP Mode ......................... 157
NetworkServices HTTPS OCSP URL ......................... 157
NetworkServices HTTPS Server MinimumTLSVersion .... 158
NetworkServices HTTPS StrictTransportSecurity .......... 158
NetworkServices HTTPS VerifyClientCertificate ............ 158
NetworkServices HTTPS VerifyServerCertificate .......... 158
NetworkServices NTP Mode ........................................... 158
NetworkServices NTP Server [1..3] Address ................. 159
NetworkServices SIP Mode ........................................... 159
NetworkServices SNMP CommunityName .................. 159
NetworkServices SNMP Host [1..3] Address ............ 159
NetworkServices SNMP Mode ....................................... 159
NetworkServices SNMP SystemContact ...................... 159
NetworkServices SNMP SystemLocation .................... 160
NetworkServices SSH AllowPublicKey ...................... 160
NetworkServices SSH HostKeyAlgorithm .................... 160
NetworkServices SSH Mode ........................................... 160
NetworkServices Telnet Mode ...................................... 160
NetworkServices UPnP Mode ....................................... 161
Cisco TelePresence MX700 and MX800

Administrator Guide

Introduction  Configuration  Peripherals  Maintenance  System settings  Appendices

NetworkServices UPnP Timeout ................................................................. 161
NetworkServices WelcomeText ............................................................... 161
NetworkServices XMALAPI Mode ............................................................ 161

Peripherals settings .................................................................................. 162
Peripherals Pairing CiscoTouchPanels EmcResilience ................................. 162
Peripherals Pairing CiscoTouchPanels RemotePairing ................................. 162
Peripherals Profile Cameras ..................................................................... 162
Peripherals Profile ControlSystems .......................................................... 162
Peripherals Profile TouchPanels ............................................................... 163

Phonebook settings .................................................................................. 164
Phonebook Server [1..1] ID .................................................................... 164
Phonebook Server [1..1] Type .................................................................. 164
Phonebook Server [1..1] URL .................................................................. 164

Provisioning settings ................................................................................ 165
Provisioning Connectivity ........................................................................ 165
Provisioning ExternalManager Address .................................................... 165
Provisioning ExternalManager AlternateAddress ....................................... 165
Provisioning ExternalManager Domain .................................................... 166
Provisioning ExternalManager Path ........................................................ 166
Provisioning ExternalManager Protocol .................................................. 165
Provisioning LoginName ......................................................................... 166
Provisioning Mode ................................................................................... 166
Provisioning Password ............................................................................ 167

Proximity settings .................................................................................... 168
Proximity Mode ....................................................................................... 168
Proximity Services CallControl ............................................................... 168
Proximity Services ContentShare FromClients ........................................ 168
Proximity Services ContentShare ToClients .............................................. 168

RoomAnalytics settings ........................................................................... 169
RoomAnalytics PeopleCountOutOfCall ..................................................... 169
RoomAnalytics PeoplePresenceDetector ................................................ 169

RoomReset settings .................................................................................. 170
RoomReset Control .................................................................................. 170

RTP settings ............................................................................................ 171
RTP Ports Range Start ............................................................................. 171
RTP Ports Range Stop ............................................................................. 171
RTP Video Ports Range Start .................................................................. 171
RTP Video Ports Range Stop .................................................................. 171

Security settings ....................................................................................... 172
Security Audit Logging Mode ................................................................. 172
Security Audit OnError Action ............................................................... 172
Security Audit Server Address ............................................................... 172
Security Audit Server Port ....................................................................... 173
Security Audit Server PortAssignment ................................................... 173
Security Session FailedLoginsLockoutTime ............................................ 173
Security Session InactivityTimeout .......................................................... 173
Security Session MaxFailedLogins .......................................................... 173
Security Session MaxSessionsPerUser ..................................................... 173
Security Session MaxTotalSessions ........................................................ 174
Security Session ShowLastLogon ............................................................. 174

SerialPort settings ................................................................................... 175
SerialPort BaudRate ................................................................................. 175
SerialPort LoginRequired ......................................................................... 175
SerialPort Mode ...................................................................................... 175

SIP settings ............................................................................................... 176
SIP ANAT ............................................................................................... 176
SIP Authentication Password .................................................................... 176
SIP Authentication UserName ................................................................... 176
SIP DefaultTransport ............................................................................... 176
SIP DisplayName ..................................................................................... 176
SIP Ice DefaultCandidate .......................................................................... 177
SIP Ice Mode ........................................................................................ 177
SIP Line ................................................................................................. 177
SIP ListenPort ....................................................................................... 177
SIP Mailbox .......................................................................................... 177
SIP MinimumTLSVersion .......................................................................... 178
SIP PreferredIPMedia ............................................................................... 178
SIP PreferredIPSignaling ......................................................................... 178
### System settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Standby settings</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standby BootAction</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standby Control</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standby Delay</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standby PowerSave</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standby StandbyAction</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standby WakeupAction</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standby WakeupOnMotionDetection</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SystemUnit settings</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SystemUnit CrashReporting Advanced</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SystemUnit CrashReporting Mode</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SystemUnit CrashReporting Url</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SystemUnit Name</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time settings</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time DateFormat</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time TimeFormat</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time WorkDay End</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time WorkDay Start</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time WorkWeek FirstDayOfWeek</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time WorkWeek LastDayOfWeek</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Zone</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserInterface settings</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserInterface Accessibility IncomingCallNotification</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserInterface ContactInfo Type</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserInterface CustomMessage</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserInterface KeyTones Mode</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserInterface Language</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserInterface OSD EncryptionIndicator</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserInterface OSD HalfwakeMessage</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserInterface OSD Output</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserInterface Security Mode</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserInterface SettingsMenu Mode</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserInterface Wallpaper</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserManagement settings</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserManagement LDAP Admin Filter</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserManagement LDAP Admin Group</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserManagement LDAP Attribute</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserManagement LDAP BaseDN</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserManagement LDAP Encryption</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserManagement LDAP MinimumTLSVersion</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserManagement LDAP Mode</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserManagement LDAP Server Address</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserManagement LDAP Server Port</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserManagement LDAP VerifyServerCertificate</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video settings</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video ActiveSpeaker DefaultPIPPosition</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video DefaultLayoutFamily Local</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video DefaultLayoutFamily Remote</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video DefaultMainSource</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Input Connector [1..4] PresentationSelection</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Input Connector [1..4] RGBQuantizationRange</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Input Connector [1..5] CameraControl Cameral</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Input Connector [1..5] CameraControl Mode</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Input Connector [1..5] InputSourceType</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Input Connector [1..5] Name</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Input Connector [1..5] OptimalDefinition Profile</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Input Connector [1..5] OptimalDefinition Threshold60fps</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Input Connector [1..5] Quality</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Input Connector [1..5] Visibility</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Input Connector [4..4] DviType</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Input Connector [5] SignalType</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Video Monitors</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Experimental settings ................................................................. 202
Audio settings

Audio DefaultVolume
Define the default volume for the speakers. The volume is set to this value when you switch on or restart the video system. Use the controls on the user interface to change the volume while it is running. You may also use API commands (xCommand Audio Volume) to change the volume while the video system is running, and to reset to default value.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR, USER
Default value: 50
Value space: Integer (0..100)
Range: Select a value between 1 and 100. This corresponds to the dB range from -34.5 dB to 15 dB, in steps of 0.5 dB. If set to 0 the audio is switched off.

Audio Input HDMI \[n\] Level
This setting applies to HDMI \[2..3\] for single camera systems, and to HDMI \[3\] for dual camera systems.
Set the gain on the HDMI input connector. The gain can be tuned in steps of 1 dB.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: 0
Value space: Integer (-24..0)
Range: Select the gain in decibel (dB).

Audio Input HDMI \[n\] Mode
This setting applies to HDMI \[2..3\] for single camera systems, and to HDMI \[3\] for dual camera systems.
Define if the audio on the HDMI input connector shall be enabled.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On

Off: Disable audio on the HDMI input.
On: Enable audio on the HDMI input.

Audio Input HDMI \[n\] VideoAssociation MuteOnInactiveVideo
This setting applies to HDMI \[2..3\] for single camera systems, and to HDMI \[3\] for dual camera systems.
Use this setting to decide whether to stop the audio playback of a connected presentation source if that presentation source is not currently shown on-screen, or to always playback the audio as long as the presentation source is connected.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On

Off: Audio is played, locally and to far end, as long as a presentation source is connected; you do not have to present the HDMI input source.
On: Audio is played, locally and to far end, only when the connected presentation source is shown on-screen.

Audio Input Line \[1..4\] Equalizer ID
Select the equalizer ID of the audio source that is connected to the line input.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: 1
Value space: Integer (1..8)
Set the equalizer ID.

Audio Input Line \[1..4\] Equalizer Mode
Define the equalizer mode for the audio source that is connected to the line input.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On

Off: No equalizer.
On: Enable the equalizer for the audio source that is connected to the line input.
Audio Input Line [1..4] VideoAssociation MuteOnInactiveVideo
The audio source can be associated with a video source on the video input connector, and you can determine whether to play or mute audio depending on whether the video source is presented or not.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Line[1,2]: On Line[3,4]: Off

Value space: Off/On
- Off: The audio source is not associated with a video source. The audio will be played locally and to far end regardless of whether the video source is presented.
- On: The audio source is associated with a video source. The audio will be played locally and to far end when the associated video source is presented. The audio will be muted when the video source is not presented.

Audio Input Line [1..4] VideoAssociation VideoInputSource
The audio source can be associated with a video source on the video input connector.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Line[1,2]: 4 Line[3,4]: 1

Value space: 1/2/3/4/5
- Select the video input connector to associate the audio source with.

Audio Input Line [1..4] Channel
Define whether the audio source on the line input is a mono signal or part of a multichannel signal.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Left

Value space: Left/Mono/Right
- Left: The Audio Line input signal is the left channel of a stereo signal.
- Mono: The Audio Line input signal is a mono signal.
- Right: The Audio Line input signal is the right channel of a stereo signal.

Audio Input Line [1..4] Level
Set the gain on the Line input connector. The gain should be adjusted to suit the output level of the connected audio source. The gain can be tuned in steps of 1 dB.
If the gain is set too high, the audio signal will be clipped. If the gain is set too low, the audio signal-to-noise ratio will be degraded; however, this is usually preferable to clipping.
The maximum input level with 0 dB gain is 22 dBu.
Example: If your audio source has a maximum output level of 8 dBu, then you should set the gain to 22 dBu - 8 dBu = 14 dB.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: 10

Value space: Integer (0..24)
- Range: Select the gain in decibel (dB).

Audio Input Line [1..4] Mode
Define the mode for the audio input line.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: On

Value space: Off/On
- Off: Disable the Audio Line input.
- On: Enable the Audio Line input.

Audio Input Microphone [1..8] EchoControl Mode
The echo canceller continuously adjusts itself to the audio characteristics of the room, and compensates for any changes it detects in the audio environment. If the changes in the audio conditions are significant, the echo canceller may take a second or two to re-adjust.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: On

Value space: Off/On
- Off: Turn off the echo control. Recommended if external echo cancellation or playback equipment is used.
- On: Turn on the echo control. Recommended, in general, to prevent the far end from hearing their own audio. Once selected, echo cancellation is active at all times.
Audio Input Microphone [1..8] EchoControl Dereverberation

The system has built-in signal processing to reduce the effect of room reverberation. Dereverberation requires that Audio Input Microphone [n] EchoControl Mode is enabled.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR

Default value: Off

Value space: Off/On
  Off: Turn off the dereverberation.
  On: Turn on the dereverberation.

Audio Input Microphone [1..8] EchoControl NoiseReduction

The system has built-in noise reduction, which reduces stationary background noise, for example noise from air-conditioning systems, cooling fans etc. In addition, a high pass filter (Humfilter) reduces very low frequency noise. Noise reduction requires that Audio Input Microphone [n] EchoControl Mode is enabled.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR

Default value: On

Value space: Off/On
  Off: Turn off the noise reduction.
  On: Turn on the noise reduction. Recommended in the presence of low frequency noise.

Audio Input Microphone [1..8] Equalizer ID

Select the equalizer ID of the source that is connected to the microphone input.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR

Default value: 1

Value space: Integer (1..8)
  Set the equalizer ID.

Audio Input Microphone [1..8] Equalizer Mode

Define the equalizer mode for the source that is connected to the microphone input.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR

Default value: Off

Value space: Off/On
  Off: No equalizer.
  On: Enable the equalizer for the source that is connected to the microphone input.

Audio Input Microphone [1..8] Level

Set the gain on the Microphone input connector. The gain should be adjusted to suit the output level of the connected audio source. The gain can be tuned in steps of 1 dB.

If the gain is set too high, the audio signal will be clipped. If the gain is set too low, the audio signal-to-noise ratio will be degraded; however, this is usually preferable to clipping.

Note that unprocessed speech signals typically contain significant level variations, making it very important to allow for sufficient signal headroom.

The maximum input level with 0 dB gain, is 22 dBu.

Example: If your microphone has a maximum output level of -44 dBu, then you should set the gain to 22 dBu - (-44 dBu) = 66 dB.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR

Default value: 58

Value space: Integer (0..70)
  Range: Select the gain in decibel (dB).

Audio Input Microphone [1..8] Mode

Disable or enable audio on the microphone connector.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR

Default value: On

Value space: Off/On
  Off: Disable the audio input microphone connector.
  On: Enable the audio input microphone connector.
Audio Input Microphone [1..8] Type
The microphone connectors are intended for electret type microphones. The microphone connector can be set to line or microphone mode.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Microphone
Value space: Line/Microphone
  - Microphone: Select Microphone when you have 48 V Phantom voltage and the pre-amplification is On.
  - Line: Select Line when you have a standard balanced line input. The phantom voltage and pre-amplification is Off.

Audio Input Microphone [1..8] VideoAssociation
MuteOnInactiveVideo
The microphone can be associated with a video source on the video input connector, and you can determine whether to play or mute audio depending on whether the video source is presented or not. By default, audio is not muted.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
  - Off: No video source is associated.
  - On: A video source is associated, and the audio will be muted if the associated video source is not displayed.

Audio Input Microphone [1..8] VideoAssociation
VideoInputSource
Select the video input connector to associate the audio source with.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: 1
Value space: 1/2/3/4/5
  - Select the video input connector to associate the audio source with.

Audio Microphones Mute Enabled
Define the microphone mute behavior on the video system.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: True
Value space: True/InCallOnly
  - True: Muting of audio is always available.
  - InCallOnly: Muting of audio is only available when the device is in a call. When Idle it is not possible to mute the microphone. This is useful when an external telephone service/ audio system is connected via the codec and is to be available when the codec is not in a call. When set to InCallOnly this will prevent the audio-system from being muted by mistake.

Audio MicrophoneReinforcement Input Microphone [1..8] Mode
Set the microphone reinforcement mode individually on each microphone. The signals from all microphones with Mode = On will be mixed and fed to the selected MicrophoneReinforcement outputs. Also consult the Audio MicrophoneReinforcement Output Line Mode setting.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
  - Off: The microphone signal will be sent only to the far end. It will not be fed to the selected MicrophoneReinforcement outputs.
  - On: The microphone signal will be fed to the selected MicrophoneReinforcement outputs, as well as to the far end.
Audio MicrophoneReinforcement Output Line [1..4] Mode
Set the microphone reinforcement mode individually on each line output. If Mode = On, the line output will add the microphone reinforcement mix to its ordinary output signal. Also consult the Audio MicrophoneReinforcement Input Microphone Mode setting.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Off

Value space: Off/On
On: This output will deliver far end audio, local presentation audio and the microphone reinforcement mix.
Off: This output will deliver far end audio and local presentation audio.

Audio MicrophoneReinforcement Gain
The gain (in dB) that will be applied to the mixed microphone signal that is fed to the selected MicrophoneReinforcement outputs.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: -54

Value space: Integer (-54..15)
Use this gain to adjust the level of microphone signal that should be fed to the local output. The value -54 means "Off", and no signal will be fed from the microphone to the output.

Audio Output Line [1..6] Channel
Define whether the Audio Line output is a mono signal or part of a multichannel signal.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Line[1,3,5]: Left   Line[2,4,6]: Right

Value space: Left/Mono/Right
Left: The Audio Line output signal is the left channel of a stereo signal.
Mono: The Audio Line output signal is a mono signal.
Right: The Audio Line output signal is the right channel of a stereo signal.

Audio Output Line [1..6] Delay DelayMs
To obtain lip-synchronization, you can configure each audio line output with an extra delay that compensates for delay in other connected devices, for example TVs and external loudspeakers. The delay that you set here is either fixed or relative to the delay on the HDMI output, as defined in the Audio Output Line [n] Delay Mode setting.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: 0

Value space: Integer (0..290)
The delay in milliseconds.

Audio Output Line [1..6] Delay Mode
You may add extra delay to an audio line output with the Audio Output Line [n] Delay DelayMs setting. The extra delay added is either a fixed number of milliseconds, or a number of milliseconds relative to the detected delay on the HDMI output (typically introduced by the connected TV).

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Fixed

Value space: Fixed/RelativeToHDMI
Fixed: Any extra delay (DelayMs) added to the output, will be a fixed number of millisecond.
RelativeToHDMI: Any extra delay (DelayMs) added to the output, will be relative to the detected delay on the HDMI output. The actual delay is HDMI-delay + DelayMs. The Audio Output Connectors Line [n] DelayMs status reports the actual delay.

Audio Output Line [1..6] Equalizer ID
Select the equalizer ID for the audio source that is connected to the output line.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: 1

Value space: Integer (1..8)
Set the equalizer ID.
Audio Output Line [1..6] Equalizer Mode
Define the equalizer mode for the audio source that is connected to the output line.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
   Off: No equalizer.
   On: Enable the equalizer for the audio output line.

Audio Output Line [1..6] Level
Set the gain on the Line output connector. The gain should be adjusted to fit the audio input level of the connected device. The gain can be tuned in steps of 1 dB. The maximum output level with 0 dB gain is 22 dBu.
Example: If the connected audio device has max input level 10 dBu, then you should set the gain to 10 dBu - 22 dBu = -12 dB.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: -10
Value space: Integer (-24..0)
   Range: Select the gain in decibel (dB).

Audio Output Line [1..6] Mode
Define the mode for the audio line output.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
   Off: Disable the audio line output.
   On: Enable the audio line output.

Audio SoundsAndAlerts RingTone
Define which ringtone to use for incoming calls.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR, USER
Default value: Sunrise
Value space: Sunrise/Mischief/Ripples/Reflections/Vibes/Delight/Evolve/Playful/Ascent/Calculation/Mellow/Ringer
   Select a ringtone from the list.

Audio SoundsAndAlerts RingVolume
Define the ring volume for incoming calls.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR, USER
Default value: 30
Value space: Integer (0..100)
   Range: The value goes in steps of 5 from 0 to 100 (from -34.5 dB to 15 dB). Volume 0 = Off.

Audio Ultrasound Mode
This setting applies to the Intelligent Proximity feature. Keep the setting at its default value.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Dynamic
Value space: Dynamic/Static
   Dynamic: The video system adjusts the ultrasound volume dynamically. The volume may vary up to the maximum level as defined in the Audio Ultrasound Volume MaxVolume setting.
   Static: Use only if advised by Cisco.
Audio Ultrasound MaxVolume

This setting applies to the Intelligent Proximity feature. Set the maximum volume of the ultrasound pairing message.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR

Default value: 66

Value space: Integer (0..90)

Select a value in the specified range. If set to 0, the ultrasound is switched off.
CallHistory settings

CallHistory Mode
Determine whether or not information about calls that are placed or received are stored, including missed calls and calls that are not answered (call history). This determines whether or not the calls appear in the Recents list in the user interfaces.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: On

Value space: Off/On
  - Off: New entries are not added to the call history.
  - On: New entries are stored in the call history list.
Cameras settings

Cameras Camera [1..7] AssignedSerialNumber

The camera ID is the number n in Camera [n]. By default, the camera ID is assigned automatically to a camera. If EDID information is not passed on from the camera to the codec, the camera ID is not persistent after a reboot. This means that a camera may get a new camera ID when the codec (video system) is restarted.

You should use the Cameras Camera AssignedSerialNumber setting to cater for configurations where the codec does not receive EDID information from multiple cameras. This setting allows you to manually assign a camera ID to a camera by associating the camera ID with the camera's serial number. The setting is persistent until the codec is factory reset.

Typical situations where the codec does not receive EDID information are: when you connect a Cisco TelePresence Precision 60 camera using 3G-SDI; when you connect a Cisco TelePresence Precision 40 (Cisco TelePresence PrecisionHD 1080p4xS2) camera; when you use an HDMI repeater that does not pass on EDID information.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: ""

Value space: String (0, 20)

The camera's serial number.

Cameras Camera [1..7] Brightness DefaultLevel

Define the brightness level. Requires the Cameras Camera [n] Brightness Mode to be set to Manual.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: 20

Value space: Integer (1..31)

The brightness level.

Cameras Camera [1..7] Brightness Mode

Define the camera brightness mode.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Auto

Value space: Auto/Manual

Auto: The camera brightness is automatically set by the system.


Cameras Camera [1..7] Backlight DefaultMode

This configuration turns backlight compensation on or off. Backlight compensation is useful when there is much light behind the persons in the room. Without compensation the persons will easily appear very dark to the far end.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Off

Value space: Off/On

Off: Turn off the camera backlight compensation.
On: Turn on the camera backlight compensation.
Cameras Camera [n] Flip
This setting applies to Camera [2..7] for single camera systems, and to Camera [3..7] for dual camera systems.
With Flip mode (vertical flip) you can flip the image upside down. Flipping applies both to the self-view and the video that is transmitted to the far end.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Auto
Value space: Auto/Off/On
Auto: If the camera detects that it is mounted upside down, the image is automatically flipped. If the camera cannot auto-detect whether it is mounted upside down or not, the image is not changed.
Off: Display the image on screen the normal way.
On: Display the image flipped upside down. This setting is used when a camera is mounted upside down, but cannot automatically detect which way it is mounted.

Cameras Camera [n] Focus Mode
This setting applies to Camera [2..7] for single camera systems, and to Camera [3..7] for dual camera systems.
Define the camera focus mode.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Auto
Value space: Auto/AutoLimited/Manual
Auto: The camera will do continuous auto focusing. It will, more specifically, run auto focus once a call is connected, after pan, tilt, zoom have changed, and generally when the camera identifies a change in the scene.
AutoLimited: In most cases this mode will operate the same way as Auto. In some cases AutoLimited will reduce the focus hunting that may occur. Problematic scenes have large areas with no or low contrast, for instance a painted wall with no details, or maybe a partly empty whiteboard. There's a slightly higher chance of background focus with this mode, compared to Auto.
Manual: Turn the autofocus off and adjust the camera focus manually.

Cameras Camera [1..7] Gamma Mode
This setting enables gamma corrections. Gamma describes the nonlinear relationship between image pixels and monitor brightness.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Auto
Value space: Auto/Manual
Auto: Auto is the default and the recommended setting.
Manual: In manual mode the gamma value is changed with the gamma level setting, ref. Cameras Camera [n] Gamma Level.

Cameras Camera [1..7] Gamma Level
By setting the Gamma Level you can select which gamma correction table to use. This setting may be useful in difficult lighting conditions, where changes to the brightness setting does not provide satisfactory results. Requires the Cameras Camera [n] Gamma Mode to be set to Manual.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: 0
Value space: Integer (0..7)
Define the gamma level.
Cameras Camera \([n]\) Mirror

With Mirror mode (horizontal flip) you can mirror the image on screen. Mirroring applies both to the self-view and the video that is transmitted to the far end. Mirroring is automatically disabled while speaker tracking is on.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Auto

Value space: Auto/Off/On

- Auto: For the integrated cameras, the image is always displayed as other people see you. For other cameras, if the camera detects that it is mounted upside down, the image is automatically mirrored. If the camera cannot auto-detect whether it is mounted upside down or not, the image is not changed.
- Off: For integrated cameras, display the image as you see yourself in a mirror; for other cameras, display the image as other people see you.
- On: For integrated cameras, display the image as other people see you; for other cameras, display the image as you see yourself in a mirror.

Cameras Camera \([1..7]\) MotorMoveDetection

This setting applies only when using a Cisco TelePresence PrecisionHD 1080p12x camera. If adjusting the camera position by hand you can configure whether the camera should keep its new position or return to the preset or position it had before.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Off

Value space: Off/On

- Off: When the camera position is adjusted manually the camera will keep this position until adjusted again. WARNING: If you manually tilt the camera, the camera will not register the new pan and tilt values since there is no position feedback. This will result in wrong pan and tilt values when recalling the camera presets subsequently.
- On: When the camera position is adjusted manually, or the camera detects that the motors have moved, it will first re-initialize (i.e. go to default position) then return to the preset/position it had before the camera was adjusted.

Cameras Camera \([1..7]\) Whitebalance Mode

Define the camera white balance mode.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Auto

Value space: Auto/Manual

- Auto: The camera will continuously adjust the white balance depending on the camera view.
- Manual: Enables manual control of the camera white balance. The white balance level is set using the Cameras Camera \([n]\) Whitebalance Level setting.

Cameras Camera \([1..7]\) Whitebalance Level

Define the white balance level. Requires the Cameras Camera \([n]\) Whitebalance Mode to be set to manual.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: 1

Value space: Integer (1..16)

The white balance level.

Cameras PowerLine Frequency

If your camera supports power line frequency anti-flickering, the camera is able to compensate for any flicker noise from the electrical power supply. You should set this camera configuration based on your power line frequency. If your camera supports auto detection of line frequency, you can select the Auto option in the configuration.

All Cisco Precision cameras support both anti-flickering and auto detection of line frequency. Auto is the default value, so you should change this setting if you have a camera that does not support auto detection.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Auto

Value space: 50Hz/60Hz/Auto

- 50Hz: Use this value when the power line frequency is 50 Hz.
- 60Hz: Use this value when the power line frequency is 60 Hz.
- Auto: Allow the camera to detect the power frequency automatically.
Cameras PresenterTrack CameraPosition Pan
Define the pan position that the presenter tracking camera will move to when the feature is activated. Only the Precision 60 camera and the video system's internal camera support presenter tracking.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: 0
Value space: Integer (-65535..65535)

Cameras PresenterTrack CameraPosition Tilt
Define the tilt position that the presenter tracking camera will move to when the feature is activated. Only the Precision 60 camera and the video system's internal camera support presenter tracking.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: 0
Value space: Integer (-65535..65535)

Cameras PresenterTrack CameraPosition Zoom
Define the zoom position that the presenter tracking camera will move to when the feature is activated. Only the Precision 60 camera and the video system's internal camera support presenter tracking.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: 0
Value space: Integer (-65535..65535)

Cameras PresenterTrack Connector
Define which video input connector the presenter tracking camera is connected to. Only the Precision 60 camera and the video system's internal camera support presenter tracking.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: 1
Value space: Integer (1..5)

Cameras PresenterTrack Enabled
Define whether or not the PresenterTrack feature is available for use. Only the Precision 60 camera and the video system's internal camera support presenter tracking.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: False
Value space: False/True
False: The PresenterTrack feature is disabled.
True: The PresenterTrack feature is available for use.
Cameras PresenterTrack PresenterDetectedStatus

Define whether to enable or disable automatic switching between the Remote Presenter and Local Presenter modes in the Briefing room scenario (Room Type templates). Automatic switching implies that the system switches to Local Presenter mode when a person is detected in the PresenterTrack trigger zone, and that the system switches back to the Remote Presenter mode when the local presenter leaves the stage.

If this setting is enabled, the Cameras PresenterTrack PresenterDetected status will be updated when a new person enters the trigger zone.

Only the Precision 60 camera and the video system's internal camera support presenter tracking.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Enabled
Value space: Disabled/Enabled
- Disabled: No automatic switching between modes.
- Enabled: Automatic switching between the Local Presenter and Remote Presenter modes.

Cameras PresenterTrack TriggerZone

Define the trigger zone, which corresponds to the area where a person's face must be detected for presenter tracking to start.

The format is a string of x and y coordinate pairs: "x1,y1,...,xn,yn", where the range of x is (0,1920) and y is (0,1080). Two coordinate pairs define the upper left and lower right corner of a rectangular trigger zone. More than two coordinate pairs define the vertices of a polygonal trigger zone.

Only the Precision 60 camera and the video system's internal camera support presenter tracking.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0..255)
- The coordinates for the trigger zone.

Cameras PresenterTrack TriggerAutofocus

The current position (pan and tilt), zoom and focus are stored with a preset. Use this setting to determine if the camera should refocus or use the focus value that is stored with the preset.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Auto
Value space: Auto/Off/On
- Auto: Whether the camera refocuses or not when selecting a preset, depends on the camera type.
- Off: The focus value that is stored with the preset will be used. The camera will not refocus when selecting a preset.
- On: The camera will refocus when selecting a preset. The focus value that is stored with the preset may be overridden.

Cameras SpeakerTrack Mode

This setting applies only to systems with dual cameras.

The dual camera assembly consists of two cameras and uses an audio tracking technique that finds and captures a close-up of the active speaker. When a change of speaker is detected, the system can switch automatically between the two cameras to always show the best camera view. Refer to the Cameras SpeakerTrack TrackingMode setting for different switching modes.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Auto
Value space: Auto/Off
- Auto: Speaker tracking is switched on. The system will detect people in the room and automatically select the best camera framing. Users can switch speaker track on or off instantly in the camera control panel on the Touch controller.
- Off: Speaker tracking is switched off, and the two cameras operate as individual cameras.
Cameras SpeakerTrack Closeup
This setting applies only when the Cameras SpeakerTrack Mode is set to Auto. When a person in the room speaks the system will find the person and select the best camera framing. This is called a closeup and may not include all the persons in the room. If you want all the persons in the room to be in the picture at all times you can turn off the closeup functionality.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR, USER
Default value: Auto
Value space: Auto/Off
   Auto: The system will zoom in on the person speaking.
   Off: The system will keep all the persons in the room in the camera framing at all times.

Cameras SpeakerTrack TrackingMode
This setting applies only to systems with a dual camera (speaker tracking), and when Cameras SpeakerTrack Mode is set to Auto.
The speaker tracking algorithm can react to changes in two modes, one faster than the other. The mode determines when the camera view will change to a new speaker.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Auto
Value space: Auto/Conservative
   Auto: This is the normal tracking mode.
   Conservative: The camera view will change to a new speaker later than in normal tracking mode.

Cameras SpeakerTrack ConnectorDetection Mode
Not applicable in this version.

Cameras SpeakerTrack ConnectorDetection CameraLeft
Not applicable in this version.

Cameras SpeakerTrack ConnectorDetection CameraRight
Not applicable in this version.

Cameras SpeakerTrack Whiteboard Mode
This setting applies only to systems with dual cameras.
The Snap to Whiteboard feature extends the speaker tracking functionality, thus you need a camera that supports speaker tracking. When a presenter is standing next to the whiteboard, the camera will capture both the presenter and the whiteboard if the Snap to Whiteboard feature is enabled. If the feature is disabled, only the presenter will be captured. The Snap to Whiteboard feature is set up from the Touch controller or web interface.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR, USER
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
   Off: The Snap to Whiteboard feature is disabled.
   On: The Snap to Whiteboard feature is enabled.
Conference settings

Conference ActiveControl Mode

Active control is a feature that allows conference participants to administer a conference on Cisco TelePresence Server or Cisco Meeting Server using the video system's interfaces. Each user can see the participant list, change video layout, disconnect participants, etc. from the interface. The active control feature is enabled by default, provided that it is supported by the infrastructure (Cisco Unified Communications Manager (CUCM) version 9.1.2 or newer, Cisco TelePresence Video Communication Server (VCS) version X8.1 or newer, Cisco Media Server (CMS) version 2.1 or newer). Change this setting if you want to disable the active control features.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Auto
Value space: Auto/Off
  Auto: Active control is enabled when supported by the infrastructure.
  Off: Active control is disabled.

Conference AutoAnswer Mode

Define the auto answer mode. Use the Conference AutoAnswer Delay setting if you want the system to wait a number of seconds before answering the call, and use the Conference AutoAnswer Mute setting if you want your microphone to be muted when the call is answered.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
  Off: You can answer incoming calls manually by tapping Answer on the Touch controller.
  On: The system automatically answers incoming calls, except if you are already in a call. You can answer or decline incoming calls manually when you are already engaged in a call.

Conference AutoAnswer Mute

Define if the microphone shall be muted when an incoming call is automatically answered.
Requires that AutoAnswer Mode is switched on.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
  Off: The incoming call will not be muted.
  On: The incoming call will be muted when automatically answered.

Conference AutoAnswer Delay

Define how long (in seconds) an incoming call has to wait before it is answered automatically by the system. Requires that AutoAnswer Mode is switched on.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: 0
Value space: Integer (0..50)
  The auto answer delay (seconds).

Conference CallProtocolIPStack

Select if the system should enable IPv4, IPv6, or dual IP stack on the call protocol (SIP, H323).

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Dual
Value space: Dual/IPv4/IPv6
  Dual: Enables both IPv4 and IPv6 for the call protocol.
  IPv4: When set to IPv4, the call protocol will use IPv4.
  IPv6: When set to IPv6, the call protocol will use IPv6.
Conference Default Call Protocol
Define the Default Call Protocol to be used when placing calls from the system.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Auto
Value space: Auto/H320/H323/Sip/Spark
  Auto: Enables auto-selection of the call protocol based on which protocols are available. If multiple protocols are available, the order of priority is: 1) SIP; 2) H323; 3) H320. If the system cannot register, the auto-selection chooses H323.
  H320: All calls are set up as H.320 calls (only applicable if used with Cisco TelePresence ISDN Link).
  H323: All calls are set up as H.323 calls.
  Sip: All calls are set up as SIP calls.
  Spark: Reserved for Webex registered systems. Do not use.

Conference Default Call Rate
Define the Default Call Rate to be used when placing calls from the system.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: 6000
Value space: Integer (64..6000)
The default call rate (kbps).

Conference Do Not Disturb Default Timeout
This setting determines the default duration of a Do Not Disturb session, i.e. the period when incoming calls are rejected and registered as missed calls. The session can be terminated earlier by using the user interface.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: 60
Value space: Integer (1..1440)
The number of minutes (maximum 1440 minutes = 24 hours) before the Do Not Disturb session times out automatically.

Conference Encryption Mode
Define the conference encryption mode. A padlock with the text "Encryption On" or "Encryption Off" displays on screen for a few seconds when the conference starts.
NOTE: If the Encryption Option Key is not installed on the video system, the encryption mode is always Off.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: BestEffort
Value space: Off/On/BestEffort
  Off: The system will not use encryption.
  On: The system will only allow calls that are encrypted.
  BestEffort: The system will use encryption whenever possible.
> In Point to point calls: If the far end system supports encryption (AES-128), the call will be encrypted. If not, the call will proceed without encryption.
> In MultiSite calls: In order to have encrypted MultiSite conferences, all sites must support encryption. If not, the conference will be unencrypted.

Conference Far End Control Mode
Lets you decide if the remote side (far end) should be allowed to select your video sources and control your local camera (pan, tilt, zoom).
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
  Off: The far end is not allowed to select your video sources or to control your local camera (pan, tilt, zoom).
  On: Allows the far end to be able to select your video sources and control your local camera (pan, tilt, zoom). You will still be able to control your camera and select your video sources as normal.
Conference FarEndControl SignalCapability
Define the far end control (H.224) signal capability mode.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
  Off: Disable the far end control signal capability.
  On: Enable the far end control signal capability.

Conference FarEndMessage Mode
Toggle whether it is allowed to send data between two codecs in a point-to-point call, for use with control systems or macros. Works with SIP calls only. This setting will enable/disable the use of the xCommand Call FarEndMessage Send command.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
  Off: It is not possible to send messages between two codecs.
  On: It is possible to send messages between two codecs in a point-to-point call.

Conference MaxReceiveCallRate
Define the maximum receive bit rate to be used when placing or receiving calls. Note that this is the maximum bit rate for each individual call; use the Conference MaxTotalReceiveCallRate setting to set the aggregated maximum for all simultaneous active calls.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: 6000
Value space: Integer (64..6000)
  The maximum receive call rate (kbps).

Conference MaxTransmitCallRate
Define the maximum transmit bit rate to be used when placing or receiving calls. Note that this is the maximum bit rate for each individual call; use the Conference MaxTotalTransmitCallRate setting to set the aggregated maximum for all simultaneous active calls.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: 6000
Value space: Integer (64..6000)
  The maximum transmit call rate (kbps).

Conference MaxTotalReceiveCallRate
This configuration applies when using a video system's built-in MultiSite feature (optional) to host a multipoint video conference. Define the maximum overall receive bit rate allowed. The bit rate will be divided fairly among all active calls at any time. This means that the individual calls will be up-speeded or down-speeded as appropriate when someone leaves or enters a multipoint conference, or when a call is put on hold (suspended) or resumed. The maximum receive bit rate for each individual call is defined in the Conference MaxReceiveCallRate setting.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: 6000
Value space: Integer (64..6000)
  The maximum receive call rate (kbps).
Conference MaxTotalTransmitCallRate
This configuration applies when using a video system's built-in MultiSite feature (optional) to host a multipoint video conference. Define the maximum overall transmit bit rate allowed. The bit rate will be divided fairly among all active calls at any time. This means that the individual calls will be up-speeded or down-speeded as appropriate when someone leaves or enters a multipoint conference, or when a call is put on hold (suspended) or resumed. The maximum transmit bit rate for each individual call is defined in the Conference MaxTransmitCallRate setting.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: 6000
Value space: Integer (64..6000)

The maximum transmit call rate (kbps).

Conference MicUnmuteOnDisconnect Mode
Define if the microphones shall be unmuted automatically when all calls are disconnected. In a meeting room or other shared resources this may be done to prepare the system for the next user.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
  Off: If muted during a call, let the microphones remain muted after the call is disconnected.
  On: Unmute the microphones after the call is disconnected.

Conference Multipoint Mode
Define how the video system handles multiparty video conferences (ad hoc conferences). If registered to a Cisco TelePresence Video Communication Server (VCS), the video system can use its own built-in MultiSite feature. If registered to a Cisco Unified Communications Manager (CUCM) version 8.6.2 or newer, the video system can use either the CUCM conference bridge, or the video system's own built-in MultiSite feature. Which option to use, is set-up by CUCM.

The CUCM conference bridge allows you to set up conferences with many participants. The built-in MultiSite allows up to five participants (yourself included) plus one additional audio call.

The built-in MultiSite is optional and may not be available on all video systems.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Auto
Value space: Auto/CUCMMediaResourceGroupList/MultiSite/Off
  Auto: The multipoint method is selected automatically; if no multipoint method is available, the Multipoint Mode will be set to Off.
  CUCMMediaResourceGroupList: Multiparty conferences are hosted by the CUCM configured conference bridge. This setting is provisioned by CUCM in a CUCM environment, and should never be set manually by the user.
  MultiSite: Multiparty conferences are set up using the built-in MultiSite feature. If MultiSite is selected when the MultiSite feature is not available, the Multipoint Mode will automatically be set to Off.
  Off: Multiparty conferences are not allowed.

Conference MultiStream Mode
The video system supports multistream video for conferences.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Auto
Value space: Auto/Off
  Auto: Multistream will be used when the conference infrastructure supports the feature. Minimum versions required: CMS 2.2, CUCM 11.5, VCS X8.7.
  Off: Multistream is disabled.
Conference IncomingMultisiteCall Mode
Select whether or not to allow incoming calls when already in a call/conference.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Allow

Value space: Allow/Deny
- Allow: You will be notified when someone calls you while you are already in a call. You can accept the incoming call or not. The ongoing call may be put on hold while answering the incoming call; or you may merge the calls (requires support for multiparty video conferences).
- Deny: An incoming call will be rejected if you are already in a call. You will not be notified about the incoming call. However, the call will appear as a missed call in the call history list.

Conference Presentation OnPlacedOnHold
Define whether or not to continue sharing a presentation after the remote site has put you on hold.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: NoAction

Value space: NoAction/Stop
- NoAction: The video system will not stop the presentation sharing when put on hold. The presentation will not be shared while you are on hold, but it will continue automatically when the call is resumed.
- Stop: The video system stops the presentation sharing when the remote site puts you on hold. The presentation will not continue when the call is resumed.

Conference Presentation RelayQuality
This configuration applies to video systems that are using the built-in MultiSite feature (optional) to host a multipoint video conference. When a remote user shares a presentation, the video system will transcode the presentation and send it to the other participants in the multipoint conference. The RelayQuality setting specifies whether to give priority to high frame rate or to high resolution for the presentation source.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Sharpness

Value space: Motion/Sharpness
- Motion: Gives the highest possible frame rate. Used when there is a need for higher frame rates, typically when there is a lot of motion in the picture.
- Sharpness: Gives the highest possible resolution. Used when you want the highest quality of detailed images and graphics.

Conference VideoBandwidth Mode
Define the conference video bandwidth mode.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Dynamic

Value space: Dynamic/Static
- Dynamic: The available transmit bandwidth for the video channels are distributed among the currently active channels. If there is no presentation, the main video channels will use the bandwidth of the presentation channel.
- Static: The available transmit bandwidth is assigned to each video channel, even if it is not active.
FacilityService settings

FacilityService Service [1..5] Type
Up to five different facility services can be supported simultaneously. With this setting you can select what kind of services they are. A facility service is not available unless both the FacilityService Service [n] Name and the FacilityService Service [n] Number settings are properly set. Facility services are available from the user interface.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Helpdesk

Value space: Catering/Concierge/Emergency/Helpdesk/Security/Transportation/Other
  Catering: Select this option for catering services.
  Concierge: Select this option for concierge services.
  Emergency: Select this option for emergency services.
  Helpdesk: Select this option for helpdesk services.
  Security: Select this option for security services.
  Transportation: Select this option for transportation services.
  Other: Select this option for services not covered by the other options.

FacilityService Service [1..5] Name
Define the name of the facility service. Up to five different facility services are supported. A facility service is not available unless both the FacilityService Service [n] Name and the FacilityService Service [n] Number settings are properly set. The name will show on the facility service call button, which appears when you tap the question mark icon in the top bar. Facility services are available from the user interface.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Service 1: "Live Support"  Other services: ""

Value space: String (0, 1024)
  The name of the facility service.

FacilityService Service [1..5] Number
Define the number (URI or phone number) of the facility service. Up to five different facility services are supported. A facility service is not available unless both the FacilityService Service [n] Name and the FacilityService Service [n] Number settings are properly set. Facility services are available from the user interface.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: **

Value space: String (0, 1024)
  The number (URI or phone number) of the facility service.

FacilityService Service [1..5] CallType
Define the call type for each facility service. Up to five different facility services are supported. A facility service is not available unless both the FacilityService Service [n] Name and the FacilityService Service [n] Number settings are properly set. Facility services are available from the user interface.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Video

Value space: Audio/Video
  Audio: Select this option for audio calls.
  Video: Select this option for video calls.
GPIO settings

GPIO Pin [1..4] Mode

The four GPIO pins are configured individually. The state can be retrieved by xStatus GPIO Pin [1..4] State. The default pin state is High (+12 V). When activated as an output, a pin is set to 0 V (Low); when deactivated, it is set to +12 V (High). To activate a pin as an input, the voltage on the pin must be pulled down to 0 V; to deactivate it, raise the voltage to +12 V.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: InputNoAction

Value space: InputAcceptAllCalls/InputDisconnectAllCalls/InputMuteMicrophones/
InputNoAction/OutputAllCallsEncrypted/OutputInCall/OutputManualState/
OutputMicrophonesMuted/OutputPresentationOn/OutputStandbyActive

- InputAcceptAllCalls: When the pin is activated, the xCommand Call Accept command, which accepts all incoming calls, will be issued.
- InputDisconnectAllCalls: When the pin is activated, the xCommand Call Disconnect command, which disconnects all calls, will be issued.
- InputMuteMicrophones: When the pin is activated, the microphones will be muted. When deactivated, the microphones will be unmuted.
- InputNoAction: The pin state can be set, but no operation is performed.
- OutputAllCallsEncrypted: The pin is activated when all calls are encrypted, and deactivated when one or more calls are not encrypted.
- OutputInCall: The pin is activated when in call, and deactivated when not in call.
- OutputManualState: The pin state can be set by xCommand GPIO ManualState Set PinX: High/Low. It is set to +12 V or 0 V, respectively.
- OutputMicrophonesMuted: The pin is activated when microphones are muted, and deactivated when not muted.
- OutputPresentationOn: The pin is activated when presentation is active, and deactivated when presentation is not active.
- OutputStandbyActive: The pin is activated when the system is in standby mode, and deactivated when no longer in standby.
H323 settings

H323 Authentication Mode
Define the authentication mode for the H.323 profile.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off

Value space: Off/On
- Off: The system will not try to authenticate itself to a H.323 Gatekeeper, but will still try a normal registration.
- On: If an H.323 Gatekeeper indicates that it requires authentication, the system will try to authenticate itself to the gatekeeper. Requires the H323 Authentication LoginName and H323 Authentication Password settings to be defined on both the codec and the Gatekeeper.

H323 Authentication LoginName
The system sends the H323 Authentication Login Name and the H323 Authentication Password to an H.323 Gatekeeper for authentication. The authentication is a one way authentication from the codec to the H.323 Gatekeeper, i.e. the system is authenticated to the gatekeeper. If the H.323 Gatekeeper indicates that no authentication is required, the system will still try to register. Requires the H.323 Authentication Mode to be enabled.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0, 50)
The authentication login name.

H323 Authentication Password
The system sends the H323 Authentication Login Name and the H323 Authentication Password to an H.323 Gatekeeper for authentication. The authentication is a one way authentication from the codec to the H.323 Gatekeeper, i.e. the system is authenticated to the gatekeeper. If the H.323 Gatekeeper indicates that no authentication is required, the system will still try to register. Requires the H.323 Authentication Mode to be enabled.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: **
Value space: String (0, 50)
The authentication password.

H323 CallSetup Mode
Defines whether to use a Gatekeeper or Direct calling when establishing H.323 calls. Direct H.323 calls can be made also when H323 CallSetup Mode is set to Gatekeeper.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Gatekeeper
Value space: Direct/Gatekeeper
- Direct: You can only make an H.323 call by dialing an IP address directly.
- Gatekeeper: The system uses a Gatekeeper to make an H.323 call. When choosing this option, the H323 Gatekeeper Address must also be configured.
H323 Encryption KeySize

Define the minimum or maximum key size for the Diffie-Hellman key exchange method, which is used when establishing the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) encryption key.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Min1024bit

Value space: Max1024bit/Min1024bit/Min2048bit
  - Max1024bit: The maximum size is 1024 bit.
  - Min1024bit: The minimum size is 1024 bit.
  - Min2048bit: The minimum size is 2048 bit.

H323 Gatekeeper Address

Define the IP address of the Gatekeeper. Requires H323 CallSetup Mode to be set to Gatekeeper.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: ""

Value space: String (0, 255)
  - A valid IPv4 address, IPv6 address or DNS name.

H323 H323Alias E164

The H.323 Alias E.164 defines the address of the system, according to the numbering plan implemented in the H.323 Gatekeeper. The E.164 alias is equivalent to a telephone number, sometimes combined with access codes.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: ""

Value space: String (0, 30)
  - The H.323 Alias E.164 address. Valid characters are 0-9, *, and #.

H323 H323Alias ID

Define the H.323 Alias ID, which is used to address the system on a H.323 Gatekeeper and will be displayed in the call lists.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: ""

Value space: String (0, 49)
  - The H.323 Alias ID. Example: "firstname.lastname@company.com", "My H.323 Alias ID"

H323 NAT Mode

The firewall traversal technology creates a secure path through the firewall barrier, and enables proper exchange of audio/video data when connected to an external video conferencing system (when the IP traffic goes through a NAT router). NOTE: NAT does not work in conjunction with gatekeepers.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off

Value space: Auto/Off/On
  - Auto: The system will determine if the H323 NAT Address or the real IP address should be used in signaling. This makes it possible to place calls to endpoints on the LAN as well as endpoints on the WAN. If the H323 NAT Address is wrong or not set, the real IP address will be used.
  - Off: The system will signal the real IP address.
  - On: The system will signal the configured H323 NAT Address instead of its real IP address in Q.931 and H.245. The NAT server address will be shown in the startup-menu as: "My IP Address: 10.0.2.1". If the H323 NAT Address is wrong or not set, H.323 calls cannot be set up.
H323 NAT Address

Define the external/global IP address to the router with NAT support. Packets sent to the router will then be routed to the system. Note that NAT cannot be used when registered to a gatekeeper.

In the router, the following ports must be routed to the system’s IP address:

* Port 1720
* Port 5555-6555
* Port 2326-2487

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0, 64)
A valid IPv4 address or IPv6 address.

H323 PortAllocation

This setting affects the H.245 port numbers used for H.323 call signaling.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Dynamic
Value space: Dynamic/Static

Dynamic: The system will allocate which ports to use when opening a TCP connection. The reason for doing this is to avoid using the same ports for subsequent calls, as some firewalls consider this as a sign of attack. When Dynamic is selected, the H.323 ports used are from 11000 to 20999. Once 20999 is reached they restart again at 11000. The ports are automatically selected by the system within the given range. Firewall administrators should not try to deduce which ports are used when, as the allocation schema within the mentioned range may change without any further notice.

Static: When set to Static the ports are given within a static predefined range [5555-6555].
Logging settings

Logging External Mode
Determine whether or not to use a remote syslog server for logging.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
  Off: Disable logging to a remote syslog server.
  On: Enable logging to a remote syslog server.

Logging External Protocol
Determine which protocol to use toward the remote logging server. You can use either the syslog protocol over TLS (Transport Layer Security), or the syslog protocol in plaintext. For details about the syslog protocol, see RFC 5424.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: SyslogTLS
Value space: Syslog/SyslogTLS
  Syslog: Syslog protocol in plain text.
  SyslogTLS: Syslog protocol over TLS.

Logging External Server Address
The address of the remote syslog server.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0, 255)
  A valid IPv4 address, IPv6 address or DNS name.

Logging External Server Port
The port that the remote syslog server listens for messages on. If set to 0, the video system will use the standard syslog port. The standard syslog port is 514 for syslog, and 6514 for syslog over TLS.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: 514
Value space: Integer (0..65535)
  The number of the port that the remote syslog server is using. 0 means that the video system uses the standard syslog port.

Logging Mode
Define the logging mode for the video system (syslog service). When disabled, the syslog service does not start, and most of the event logs are not generated. The Historical Logs and Call Logs are not affected.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
  Off: Disable the system logging service.
  On: Enable the system logging service.
Macros settings

Macros Mode

Macros allow you to write snippets of JavaScript code that can automate parts of your video endpoint, thus creating custom behavior. Use of macros is disabled by default, but the first time you open the Macro Editor you will be asked whether to enable use of macros on the codec. Use this setting when you want to manually enable, or to permanently disable the use of macros on the codec. You can disable the use of macros within the Macro Editor. But this will not permanently disable macros from running, because every time the codec is reset the macros will be re-enabled automatically.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
  Off: Permanently disable the use of macros on this video system.
  On: Enable the use of macros on this video system.

Macros AutoStart

All the macros run in a single process on the video endpoint, called the macro runtime. It should be running by default, but you can choose to stop and start it manually. If you restart the video system, the runtime will automatically start again if auto start is enabled.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
  Off: The macro runtime will not start automatically after a restart of the video system.
  On: The macro runtime will start automatically after a restart of the video system.
Network settings

Network [1..1] DNS DNSSEC Mode
Domain Name System Security extensions (DNSSEC) is a set of extensions to DNS. It is used to authenticate DNS replies for zones that are signed. It will still allow unsigned zones.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
Off: Disable Domain Name System Security Extensions.
On: Enable Domain Name System Security Extensions.

Network [1..1] DNS Domain Name
The DNS Domain Name is the default domain name suffix which is added to unqualified names.
Example: If the DNS Domain Name is *company.com* and the name to lookup is *MyVideoSystem*, this will result in the DNS lookup "MyVideoSystem.company.com".

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0, 64)
The DNS domain name.

Network [1..1] DNS Server [1..3] Address
Define the network addresses for DNS servers. Up to three addresses may be specified. If the network addresses are unknown, contact your administrator or Internet Service Provider.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0, 64)
A valid IPv4 address or IPv6 address.

Network [1..1] IEEE8021X Mode
The system can be connected to an IEEE 802.1X LAN network, with a port-based network access control that is used to provide authenticated network access for Ethernet networks.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
Off: The 802.1X authentication is disabled.
On: The 802.1X authentication is enabled.

Network [1..1] IEEE8021X TlsVerify
Verification of the server-side certificate of an IEEE802.1x connection against the certificates in the local CA-list when TLS is used. The CA-list must be uploaded to the video system. This can be done from the web interface.
This setting takes effect only when Network [1] IEEE8021X Eap Tls is enabled (On).

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
Off: When set to Off, TLS connections are allowed without verifying the server-side X.509 certificate against the local CA-list. This should typically be selected if no CA-list has been uploaded to the codec.
On: When set to On, the server-side X.509 certificate will be validated against the local CA-list for all TLS connections. Only servers with a valid certificate will be allowed.
Network [1..1] IEEE8021X UseClientCertificate
Authentication using a private key/certificate pair during an IEEE802.1x connection. The authentication X.509 certificate must be uploaded to the video system. This can be done from the web interface.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
   Off: When set to Off client-side authentication is not used (only server-side).
   On: When set to On the client (video system) will perform a mutual authentication TLS handshake with the server.

Network [1..1] IEEE8021X Identity
Define the user name for 802.1X authentication.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: **
Value space: String (0, 64)
   The user name for 802.1X authentication.

Network [1..1] IEEE8021X Password
Define the password for 802.1X authentication.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: **
Value space: String (0, 50)
   The password for 802.1X authentication.

Network [1..1] IEEE8021X AnonymousIdentity
The 802.1X Anonymous ID string is to be used as unencrypted identity with EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) types that support different tunneled identity, like EAP-PEAP and EAP-TTLS. If set, the anonymous ID will be used for the initial (unencrypted) EAP Identity Request.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: **
Value space: String (0, 64)
   The 802.1X Anonymous ID string.

Network [1..1] IEEE8021X Eap Md5
Define the Md5 (Message-Digest Algorithm 5) mode. This is a Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol that relies on a shared secret. Md5 is a Weak security.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
   Off: The EAP-MD5 protocol is disabled.
   On: The EAP-MD5 protocol is enabled.

Network [1..1] IEEE8021X Eap Ttls
Define the TTLS (Tunneled Transport Layer Security) mode. Authenticates LAN clients without the need for client certificates. Developed by Funk Software and Certicom. Usually supported by Agere Systems, Proxim and Avaya.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
   Off: The EAP-TTLS protocol is disabled.
   On: The EAP-TTLS protocol is enabled.
Network [1..1] IEEE8021X Eap Tls
Enable or disable the use of EAP-TLS (Transport Layer Security) for IEEE802.1x connections. The EAP-TLS protocol, defined in RFC 5216, is considered one of the most secure EAP standards. LAN clients are authenticated using client certificates.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
  Off: The EAP-TLS protocol is disabled.
  On: The EAP-TLS protocol is enabled.

Network [1..1] IEEE8021X Eap Peap
Define the Peap (Protected Extensible Authentication Protocol) mode. Authenticates LAN clients without the need for client certificates. Developed by Microsoft, Cisco and RSA Security.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
  Off: The EAP-PEAP protocol is disabled.
  On: The EAP-PEAP protocol is enabled.

Network [1..1] IPStack
Select if the system should use IPv4, IPv6, or dual IP stack, on the network interface. NOTE: After changing this setting you may have to wait up to 30 seconds before it takes effect.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: Dual
Value space: Dual/IPv4/IPv6
  Dual: When set to Dual, the network interface can operate on both IP versions at the same time, and can have both an IPv4 and an IPv6 address at the same time.
  IPv4: When set to IPv4, the system will use IPv4 on the network interface.
  IPv6: When set to IPv6, the system will use IPv6 on the network interface.

Network [1..1] IPv4 Assignment
Define how the system will obtain its IPv4 address, subnet mask and gateway address. When using DHCP for address assignment, "01" appended by the MAC address is used as client identifier in DHCP requests.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: DHCP
Value space: Static/DHCP
  Static: The addresses must be configured manually using the Network IPv4 Address, Network IPv4 Gateway and Network IPv4 SubnetMask settings (static addresses).
  DHCP: The system addresses are automatically assigned by the DHCP server.

Network [1..1] IPv4 Address
Define the static IPv4 network address for the system. Applicable only when Network IPv4 Assignment is set to Static.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: *
Value space: String (0, 64)
  A valid IPv4 address.

Network [1..1] IPv4 Gateway
Define the IPv4 network gateway address. Applicable only when the Network IPv4 Assignment is set to Static.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: *
Value space: String (0, 64)
  A valid IPv4 address.
Network [1..1] IPv4 SubnetMask

Define the IPv4 network subnet mask. Applicable only when the Network IPv4 Assignment is set to Static.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0, 64)
A valid IPv4 address.

Network [1..1] IPv6 Assignment

Define how the system will obtain its IPv6 address and the default gateway address. When using DHCPv6 for address assignment, "01" appended by the MAC address is used as client identifier in DHCP requests.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: Autoconf
Value space: Static/DHCPv6/Autoconf
Static: The codec and gateway IP addresses must be configured manually using the Network IPv6 Address and Network IPv6 Gateway settings. The options, for example NTP and DNS server addresses, must either be set manually or obtained from a DHCPv6 server. The Network IPv6 DHCPOptions setting determines which method to use.
DHCPv6: All IPv6 addresses, including options, will be obtained from a DHCPv6 server. See RFC 3315 for a detailed description. The Network IPv6 DHCPOptions setting will be ignored.
Autoconf: Enable IPv6 stateless autoconfiguration of the IPv6 network interface. See RFC 4862 for a detailed description. The options, for example NTP and DNS server addresses, must either be set manually or obtained from a DHCPv6 server. The Network IPv6 DHCPOptions setting determines which method to use.

Network [1..1] IPv6 Address

Define the static IPv6 network address for the system. Applicable only when the Network IPv6 Assignment is set to Static.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0, 64)
A valid IPv6 address including a network mask. Example: 2001:DB8::/48

Network [1..1] IPv6 Gateway

Define the IPv6 network gateway address. This setting is only applicable when the Network IPv6 Assignment is set to Static.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0, 64)
A valid IPv6 address.

Network [1..1] IPv6 DHCPOptions

Retrieve a set of DHCP options, for example NTP and DNS server addresses, from a DHCPv6 server.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
Off: Disable the retrieval of DHCP options from a DHCPv6 server.
On: Enable the retrieval of a selected set of DHCP options from a DHCPv6 server.
**Network [1..1] MTU**

Define the Ethernet MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit) size. The MTU size must be supported by your network infrastructure. The minimum size is 576 for IPv4 and 1280 for IPv6.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER

Default value: 1500

Value space: Integer (576..1500)

Set a value for the MTU (bytes).

**Network [1..1] QoS Mode**

The QoS (Quality of Service) is a method which handles the priority of audio, video and data in the network. The QoS settings must be supported by the infrastructure. Diffserv (Differentiated Services) is a computer networking architecture that specifies a simple, scalable and coarse-grained mechanism for classifying, managing network traffic and providing QoS priorities on modern IP networks.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER

Default value: Diffserv

Value space: Off/Diffserv

Off: No QoS method is used.

Diffserv: When you set the QoS Mode to Diffserv, the Network QoS Diffserv Audio, Network QoS Diffserv Video, Network QoS Diffserv Data, Network QoS Diffserv Signalling, Network QoS Diffserv ICMPv6 and Network QoS Diffserv NTP settings are used to prioritize packets.

**Network [1..1] QoS Diffserv Audio**

This setting will only take effect if Network QoS Mode is set to Diffserv.

Define which priority Audio packets should have in the IP network.

The priority for the packets ranges from 0 to 63 - the higher the number, the higher the priority. The recommended class for Audio is CS4, which equals the decimal value 32. If in doubt, contact your network administrator.

The priority set here might be overridden when packets are leaving the network controlled by the local network administrator.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER

Default value: 0

Value space: Integer (0..63)

Set the priority of the audio packets in the IP network – the higher the number, the higher the priority. 0 means "best effort".

**Network [1..1] QoS Diffserv Video**

This setting will only take effect if Network QoS Mode is set to Diffserv.

Define which priority Video packets should have in the IP network. The packets on the presentation channel (shared content) are also in the Video packet category. The priority for the packets ranges from 0 to 63 - the higher the number, the higher the priority. The recommended class for Video is CS4, which equals the decimal value 32. If in doubt, contact your network administrator.

The priority set here might be overridden when packets are leaving the network controlled by the local network administrator.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER

Default value: 0

Value space: Integer (0..63)

Set the priority of the video packets in the IP network – the higher the number, the higher the priority. 0 means "best effort".
Network [1..1] QoS Diffserv Data
This setting will only take effect if Network QoS Mode is set to Diffserv.
Define which priority Data packets should have in the IP network.
The priority for the packets ranges from 0 to 63 - the higher the number, the higher the priority. The recommended value for Data is 0, which means best effort. If in doubt, contact your network administrator.
The priority set here might be overridden when packets are leaving the network controlled by the local network administrator.
Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: 0
Value space: Integer (0..63)
Set the priority of the data packets in the IP network - the higher the number, the higher the priority. 0 means "best effort".

Network [1..1] QoS Diffserv Signalling
This setting will only take effect if Network QoS Mode is set to Diffserv.
Define which priority Signalling packets that are deemed critical (time-sensitive) for the real-time operation should have in the IP network.
The priority for the packets ranges from 0 to 63 - the higher the number, the higher the priority. The recommended class for Signalling is CS3, which equals the decimal value 24. If in doubt, contact your network administrator.
The priority set here might be overridden when packets are leaving the network controlled by the local network administrator.
Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: 0
Value space: Integer (0..63)
Set the priority of the signalling packets in the IP network - the higher the number, the higher the priority. 0 means "best effort".

Network [1..1] QoS Diffserv ICMPv6
This setting will only take effect if Network QoS Mode is set to Diffserv.
Define which priority ICMPv6 packets should have in the IP network.
The priority for the packets ranges from 0 to 63 - the higher the number, the higher the priority. The recommended value for ICMPv6 is 0, which means best effort. If in doubt, contact your network administrator.
The priority set here might be overridden when packets are leaving the network controlled by the local network administrator.
Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: 0
Value space: Integer (0..63)
Set the priority of the ICMPv6 packets in the IP network - the higher the number, the higher the priority. 0 means "best effort".

Network [1..1] QoS Diffserv NTP
This setting will only take effect if Network QoS Mode is set to Diffserv.
Define which priority NTP packets should have in the IP network.
The priority for the packets ranges from 0 to 63 - the higher the number, the higher the priority. The recommended value for NTP is 0, which means "best effort". If in doubt, contact your network administrator.
The priority set here might be overridden when packets are leaving the network controlled by the local network administrator.
Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: 0
Value space: Integer (0..63)
Set the priority of the NTP packets in the IP network - the higher the number, the higher the priority. 0 means "best effort".
Network [1..1] RemoteAccess Allow

Define which IP addresses (IPv4/IPv6) are allowed for remote access to the codec from SSH/Telnet/HTTP/HTTPS. Multiple IP addresses are separated by a white space.

A network mask (IP range) is specified by <ip address>/N, where N is 1-32 for IPv4, and N is 1-128 for IPv6. The /N is a common indication of a network mask where the first N bits are set. Thus 192.168.0.0/24 would match any address starting with 192.168.0, since these are the first 24 bits in the address.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0..255)
   A valid IPv4 address or IPv6 address.

Network [1..1] Speed

Define the Ethernet link speed. We recommend not to change from the default value, which negotiates with the network to set the speed automatically. If you do not use auto-negotiation, make sure that the speed you choose is supported by the closest switch in your network infrastructure.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Auto
Value space: Auto/10half/10full/100half/100full/1000full
   Auto: Auto-negotiate link speed.
   10half: Force link to 10 Mbps half-duplex.
   10full: Force link to 10 Mbps full-duplex.
   100half: Force link to 100 Mbps half-duplex.
   100full: Force link to 100 Mbps full-duplex.
   1000full: Force link to 1 Gbps full-duplex.

Network [1..1] TrafficControl Mode

Define the network traffic control mode to decide how to control the video packets transmission speed.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
   Off: Transmit video packets at link speed.
   On: Transmit video packets at maximum 20 Mbps. Can be used to smooth out bursts in the outgoing network traffic.

Network [1..1] VLAN Voice Mode

Define the VLAN voice mode. The VLAN Voice Mode will be set to Auto automatically if you have Cisco UCM (Cisco Unified Communications Manager) as provisioning infrastructure. Note that Auto mode will NOT work if the NetworkServices CDP Mode setting is Off.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: Auto
Value space: Auto/Manual/Off
   Auto: The Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP), if available, assigns an id to the voice VLAN. If CDP is not available, VLAN is not enabled.
   Manual: The VLAN ID is set manually using the Network VLAN Voice VlanId setting. If CDP is available, the manually set value will be overruled by the value assigned by CDP.
   Off: VLAN is not enabled.

Network [1..1] VLAN Voice VlanId

Define the VLAN voice ID. This setting will only take effect if Network VLAN Voice Mode is set to Manual.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: 1
Value space: Integer (1..4094)
   Set the VLAN voice ID.
NetworkServices settings

**NetworkServices CDP Mode**
Enable or disable the CDP (Cisco Discovery Protocol) daemon. Enabling CDP will make the endpoint report certain statistics and device identifiers to a CDP-enabled switch. If CDP is disabled, the Network VLAN Voice Mode: Auto setting will not work.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
  - Off: The CDP daemon is disabled.
  - On: The CDP daemon is enabled.

**NetworkServices H323 Mode**
Define whether the system should be able to place and receive H.323 calls or not.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
  - Off: Disable the possibility to place and receive H.323 calls.
  - On: Enable the possibility to place and receive H.323 calls.

**NetworkServices HTTP Mode**
Define whether or not to allow access to the video system using the HTTP or HTTPS (HTTP Secure) protocols. Note that the video system's web interface use HTTP or HTTPS. If this setting is switched Off, you cannot use the web interface.

For additional security (encryption and decryption of requests and pages that are returned by the web server), allow only HTTPS.

Note: The default value is HTTP+HTTPS for video systems that have been upgraded to CE9.4 (or later) from an earlier software version, provided that the video system has not been factory reset after the upgrade.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: HTTPS (changed from HTTP+HTTPS to HTTPS in CE9.4)
Value space: Off/HTTP+HTTPS/HTTPS
  - Off: Access to the video system not allowed via HTTP or HTTPS.
  - HTTP+HTTPS: Access to the video system allowed via both HTTP and HTTPS.
  - HTTPS: Access to the video system allowed via HTTPS, but not via HTTP.

**NetworkServices HTTP Proxy LoginName**
This is the user name part of the credentials for authentication towards the HTTP proxy.
Requires that the NetworkServices HTTP Proxy Mode is set to Manual.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: *
Value space: String (0, 80)
  - The authentication login name.
NetworkServices HTTP Proxy Password

This is the password part of the credentials for authentication towards the HTTP proxy. Requires that the NetworkServices HTTP Proxy Mode is set to Manual.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: ""

Value space: String (0, 64)

The authentication password.

NetworkServices HTTP Proxy Mode

The HTTP proxy for Cisco Webex can be set up manually, it can be auto-configured (PACUrl), fully automated (WPAD), or it can be turned off.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: Off

Value space: Manual/Off/PACUrl/WPAD

Manual: Enter the address of the proxy server in the NetworkServices HTTP Proxy URL setting. Optionally, also add the HTTP proxy login name and password in the NetworkServices HTTP Proxy LoginName/Password settings.
Off: The HTTP proxy mode is turned off.
PACUrl: The HTTP proxy is auto-configured. You must enter the URL for the PAC (Proxy Auto Configuration) script in the NetworkServices HTTP Proxy PACUrl setting.
WPAD: With WPAD (Web Proxy Auto Discovery) the HTTP proxy is fully automated and auto-configured.

NetworkServices HTTP Proxy URL

Set the URL of the HTTP proxy server. Requires that the NetworkServices HTTP Proxy Mode is set to Manual.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: ""

Value space: String (0..255)

A valid URL.

NetworkServices HTTP Proxy PACUrl

Set the URL of the PAC (Proxy Auto Configuration) script. Requires that the NetworkServices HTTP Proxy Mode is set to PACUrl.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: ""

Value space: String (0..255)

The URL of the PAC (Proxy Auto Configuration) script.

NetworkServices HTTPS OCSP Mode

Define the support for OCSP (Online Certificate Status Protocol) responder services. The OCSP feature allows users to enable OCSP instead of certificate revocation lists (CRLs) to check the certificate status.

For any outgoing HTTPS connection, the OCSP responder is queried of the status. If the corresponding certificate has been revoked, then the HTTPS connection will not be used.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off

Value space: Off/On

Off: Disable OCSP support.
On: Enable OCSP support.

NetworkServices HTTPS OCSP URL

Define the URL of the OCSP responder (server) that will be used to check the certificate status.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: ""

Value space: String (0..255)

A valid URL.
NetworkServices HTTPS Server MinimumTLSVersion
Set the lowest version of the TLS (Transport Layer Security) protocol that is allowed.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: TLSv1.1
Value space: TLSv1.1/TLSv1.2
  TLSv1.1: Support of TLS version 1.1 or higher.
  TLSv1.2: Support of TLS version 1.2 or higher.

NetworkServices HTTPS StrictTransportSecurity
The HTTP Strict Transport Security header lets a web site inform the browser that it should never load the site using HTTP and should automatically convert all attempts to access the site using HTTP to HTTPS requests instead.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
  Off: The HTTP strict transport security feature is disabled.
  On: The HTTP strict transport security feature is enabled.

NetworkServices HTTPS VerifyServerCertificate
When the video system connects to an external HTTPS server (like a phone book server or an external manager), this server will present a certificate to the video system to identify itself.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
  Off: Do not verify server certificates.
  On: Requires the system to verify that the server certificate is signed by a trusted Certificate Authority (CA). This requires that a list of trusted CAs are uploaded to the system in advance.

NetworkServices HTTPS VerifyClientCertificate
When the video system connects to a HTTPS client (like a web browser), the client can be asked to present a certificate to the video system to identify itself.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
  Off: The system will not use an NTP server for time reference. As default, the server address will be obtained from the network's DHCP server. If a DHCP server is not used, or if the DHCP server does not provide an NTP server address, the NTP server address that is specified in the NetworkServices NTP Server [n] Address setting will be used.
  Manual: The system will use the NTP server that is specified in the NetworkServices NTP Server [n] Address setting for time reference.
  Off: The system will not use an NTP server. The NetworkServices NTP Server [n] Address setting will be ignored.
NetworkServices NTP Server [1..3] Address

The address of the NTP server that will be used when NetworkServices NTP Mode is set to Manual, and when NetworkServices NTP Mode is set to Auto and no address is supplied by a DHCP server.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: "0.tandberg.pool.ntp.org"

Value space: String (0, 255)
  A valid IPv4 address, IPv6 address or DNS name.

NetworkServices SIP Mode

Define whether the system should be able to place and receive SIP calls or not.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: On

Value space: Off/On
  Off: Disable the possibility to place and receive SIP calls.
  On: Enable the possibility to place and receive SIP calls.

NetworkServices SNMP Mode

SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) is used in network management systems to monitor network-attached devices (routers, servers, switches, projectors, etc) for conditions that warrant administrative attention. SNMP exposes management data in the form of variables on the managed systems, which describe the system configuration. These variables can then be queried (set to ReadOnly) and sometimes set (set to ReadWrite) by managing applications.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: ReadOnly

Value space: Off/ReadOnly/ReadWrite
  Off: Disable the SNMP network service.
  ReadOnly: Enable the SNMP network service for queries only.
  ReadWrite: Enable the SNMP network service for both queries and commands.

NetworkServices SNMP Host [1..3] Address

Define the address of up to three SNMP Managers.
The system’s SNMP Agent (in the codec) responds to requests from SNMP Managers (a PC program etc.), for example about system location and system contact. SNMP traps are not supported.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: **

Value space: String (0..255)
  A valid IPv4 address, IPv6 address or DNS name.

NetworkServices SNMP CommunityName

Define the name of the Network Services SNMP Community. SNMP Community names are used to authenticate SNMP requests. SNMP requests must have a password (case sensitive) in order to receive a response from the SNMP Agent in the codec. The default password is "public". If you have the Cisco TelePresence Management Suite (TMS) you must make sure the same SNMP Community is configured there too. NOTE: The SNMP Community password is case sensitive.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: **

Value space: String (0, 50)
  The SNMP community name.

NetworkServices SNMP SystemContact

Define the name of the Network Services SNMP System Contact.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: **

Value space: String (0, 50)
  The name of the SNMP system contact.
NetworkServices SNMP SystemLocation
Define the name of the Network Services SNMP System Location.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: ""

Value space: String (0, 50)
    The name of the SNMP system location.

NetworkServices SSH Mode
SSH (or Secure Shell) protocol can provide secure encrypted communication between the codec and your local computer.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: On

Value space: Off/On
    Off: The SSH protocol is disabled.
    On: The SSH protocol is enabled.

NetworkServices SSH HostKeyAlgorithm
Choose the cryptographic algorithm that shall be used for the SSH host key. Choices are RSA (Rivest-Shamir-Adleman) with 2048 bits keysize, ECDSA (Elliptic Curve Digital Signature Algorithm) with NIST curve P-384, and EdDSA (Edwards-curve Digital Signature Algorithm) with ed25519 signature schema.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: RSA

Value space: ECDSA/RSA/ed25519
    ECDSA: Use the ECDSA algorithm (nist-384p).
    RSA: Use the RSA algorithm (2048 bits).
    ed25519: Use the ed25519 algorithm.

NetworkServices SSH AllowPublicKey
Secure Shell (SSH) public key authentication can be used to access the codec.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: On

Value space: Off/On
    Off: The SSH public key is not allowed.
    On: The SSH public key is allowed.

NetworkServices Telnet Mode
Telnet is a network protocol used on the Internet or Local Area Network (LAN) connections.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off

Value space: Off/On
    Off: The Telnet protocol is disabled. This is the factory setting.
    On: The Telnet protocol is enabled.
NetworkServices UPnP Mode

Fully disable UPnP (Universal Plug and Play), or enable UPnP for a short time period after the video system has been switched on or restarted.

The default operation is that UPnP is enabled when you switch on or restart the video system. Then UPnP is automatically disabled after the timeout period that is defined in the NetworkServices UPnP Timeout setting. Use the video system’s web interface to set the timeout.

When UPnP is enabled, the video system advertises its presence on the network. The advertisement permits a Touch controller to discover video systems automatically, and you do not need to manually enter the video system’s IP address in order to pair the Touch controller.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
- Off: UPnP is disabled. The video system does not advertise its presence, and you have to enter the video system’s IP address manually in order to pair a Touch controller to the video system.
- On: UPnP is enabled. The video system advertises its presence until the timeout period expires.

NetworkServices UPnP Timeout

Define for how many seconds UPnP shall stay enabled after the video system is switched on or restarted. The NetworkServices UPnP Mode setting must be On for this setting to take any effect.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: 600
Value space: Integer (0..3600)
- Range: Select a value between 0 and 3600 seconds.

NetworkServices WelcomeText

Choose which information the user should see when logging on to the codec through Telnet/SSH.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
- Off: The welcome text is: Login successful
- On: The welcome text is: Welcome to <system name>; Software version; Software release date; Login successful.

NetworkServices XMLAPI Mode

Enable or disable the video system’s XML API. For security reasons this may be disabled. Disabling the XML API will limit the remote manageability with for example TMS, which no longer will be able to connect to the video system.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
- Off: The XML API is disabled.
- On: The XML API is enabled.
Peripherals settings

Peripherals Pairing CiscoTouchPanels EmcResilience

If the Touch controller is used in environments with considerable amounts of electromagnetic noise present, you may experience an appearance of false signals—for example as if someone tapped the Touch controller when obviously nobody did so. To cope with this you may enable the EMC Resilience Mode.

Requires user role: ADMIN

Default value: Off

Value space: Off/On
  - Off: The EMC resilience is disabled.
  - On: The EMC resilience is enabled.

Peripherals Pairing CiscoTouchPanels RemotePairing

In order to use Cisco Touch 10 (touch panel) as user interface for the video system, Touch 10 must be either directly connected to the video system or paired to the video system via LAN. The latter is referred to as remote pairing.

Remote pairing is allowed by default; you must switch this setting Off if you want to prevent remote pairing.

Requires user role: ADMIN

Default value: On

Value space: Off/On
  - Off: Remote pairing of Touch 10 is not allowed.
  - On: Remote pairing of Touch 10 is allowed.

Peripherals Profile Cameras

Define the number of cameras that are expected to be connected to the video system. This information is used by the video system’s diagnostics service. If the number of connected cameras does not match this setting, the diagnostics service will report it as an inconsistency.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR

Default value: Minimum1

Value space: NotSet/Minimum1/0/1/2/3/4/5/6/7
  - NotSet: No camera check is performed.
  - Minimum1: At least one camera should be connected to the video system.
  - 0-7: Select the number of cameras that are expected to be connected to the video system.

Peripherals Profile ControlSystems

Define if a third-party control system, for example Crestron or AMX, is expected to be connected to the video system. This information is used by the video system’s diagnostics service. If the number of connected control systems does not match this setting, the diagnostics service will report it as an inconsistency. Note that only one third-party control system is supported.

If set to 1, the control system must send heartbeats to the video system using xCommand Peripherals Pair and HeartBeat commands. Failing to do so will cause the in-room control extensions to show a warning that the video system has lost connectivity to the control system.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR

Default value: NotSet

Value space: 1/NotSet
  - 1: One third-party control system should be connected to the video system.
  - NotSet: No check for a third-party control system is performed.
Peripherals Profile TouchPanels

Define the number of Cisco Touch controllers that are expected to be connected to the video system. This information is used by the video system's diagnostics service. If the number of connected Touch controllers does not match this setting, the diagnostics service will report it as an inconsistency.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR

Default value: Minimum1

Value space: NotSet/Minimum1/0/1/2/3/4/5
- NotSet: No touch panel check is performed.
- Minimum1: At least one Cisco Touch controller should be connected to the video system.
- 0-5: Select the number of Touch controllers that are expected to be connected to the video system. Note that only one Cisco Touch controller is officially supported.
Phonebook settings

Phonebook Server [1..1] ID
Define a name for the external phone book.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0, 64)
   The name for the external phone book.

Phonebook Server [1..1] Type
Select the phonebook server type.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/CUCM/Spark/TMS/VCS
   Off: Do not use a phonebook.
   CUCM: The phonebook is located on the Cisco Unified Communications Manager.
   Spark: The phonebook is located in the Cisco Webex cloud service.
   TMS: The phonebook is located on the Cisco TelePresence Management Suite server.
   VCS: The phonebook is located on the Cisco TelePresence Video Communication Server.

Phonebook Server [1..1] URL
Define the address (URL) to the external phone book server.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0..255)
   A valid address (URL) to the phone book server.
Provisioning settings

Provisioning Connectivity
This setting controls how the device discovers whether it should request an internal or external configuration from the provisioning server.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: Auto
Value space: Internal/External/Auto
   Internal: Request internal configuration.
   External: Request external configuration.
   Auto: Automatically discover using NAPTR queries whether internal or external configurations should be requested. If the NAPTR responses have the “e” flag, external configurations will be requested. Otherwise internal configurations will be requested.

Provisioning ExternalManager Address
Define the IP Address or DNS name of the external manager / provisioning system.

If an External Manager Address (and Path) is configured, the system will send a message to this address when starting up. When receiving this message the external manager / provisioning system can return configurations.commands to the unit as a result.

When using CUCM or TMS provisioning, the DHCP server can be set up to provide the external manager address automatically (DHCP Option 242 for TMS, and DHCP Option 150 for CUCM). An address set in the Provisioning ExternalManager Address setting will override the address provided by DHCP.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: **
Value space: String (0, 64)
   A valid IPv4 address, IPv6 address or DNS name.

Provisioning ExternalManager AlternateAddress
Only applicable when the endpoint is provisioned by Cisco Unified Communication Manager (CUCM) and an alternate CUCM is available for redundancy. Define the address of the alternate CUCM. If the main CUCM is not available, the endpoint will be provisioned by the alternate CUCM. When the main CUCM is available again, the endpoint will be provisioned by this CUCM.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: **
Value space: String (0, 64)
   A valid IPv4 address, IPv6 address or DNS name.

Provisioning ExternalManager Protocol
Define whether to use the HTTP (unsecure communication) or HTTPS (secure communication) protocol when sending requests to the external manager / provisioning system.

The selected protocol must be enabled in the NetworkServices HTTP Mode setting.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: HTTP
Value space: HTTPS/HTTP
   HTTPS: Send requests via HTTPS.
   HTTP: Send requests via HTTP.
Provisioning ExternalManager Path

Define the Path to the external manager / provisioning system. This setting is required when several management services reside on the same server, i.e. share the same External Manager address.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0..255)
A valid path to the external manager or provisioning system.

Provisioning ExternalManager Domain

Define the SIP domain for the VCS provisioning server.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0, 64)
A valid domain name.

Provisioning Mode

It is possible to configure a video system using a provisioning system (external manager). This allows video conferencing network administrators to manage many video systems simultaneously. With this setting you choose which type of provisioning system to use. Provisioning can also be switched off. Contact your provisioning system provider/representative for more information.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: Auto
Value space: Off/Auto/CUCM/Edge/Spark/TMS/VCS
- Off: The video system is not configured by a provisioning system.
- Auto: The provisioning server is automatically selected as set up in the DHCP server.
- CUCM: Push configurations to the video system from CUCM (Cisco Unified Communications Manager).
- Edge: Push configurations to the video system from CUCM (Cisco Unified Communications Manager). The system connects to CUCM via the Collaboration Edge infrastructure. In order to register over Edge the encryption option key must be installed on the video system.
- Spark: Push configurations to the video system from the Cisco Webex cloud service.
- TMS: Push configurations to the video system from TMS (Cisco TelePresence Management System).
- VCS: Push configurations to the video system from VCS (Cisco TelePresence Video Communication Server).

Provisioning LoginName

This is the username part of the credentials used to authenticate the video system with the provisioning server. This setting must be used when required by the provisioning server.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0, 80)
A valid username.
Provisioning Password

This is the password part of the credentials used to authenticate the video system with the provisioning server. This setting must be used when required by the provisioning server.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: ""

Value space: String (0, 64)
   A valid password.
Proximity settings

Proximity Mode
Determine whether the video system will emit ultrasound pairing messages or not.
When the video system emits ultrasound, Proximity clients can detect that they are close to the video system. In order to use a client, at least one of the Proximity services must be enabled (refer to the Proximity Services settings). In general, Cisco recommends enabling all the Proximity services.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
  Off: The video system does not emit ultrasound, and Proximity services cannot be used.
  On: The video system emits ultrasound, and Proximity clients can detect that they are close to the video system. Enabled Proximity services can be used.

Proximity Services CallControl
Enable or disable basic call control features on Proximity clients. When this setting is enabled, you are able to control a call using a Proximity client (for example, dial, mute, adjust volume and hang up). This service is supported by mobile devices (iOS and Android). Proximity Mode must be On for this setting to take any effect.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: Disabled
Value space: Enabled/Disabled
  Enabled: Call control from a Proximity client is enabled.
  Disabled: Call control from a Proximity client is disabled.

Proximity Services ContentShare FromClients
Enable or disable content sharing from Proximity clients. When this setting is enabled, you can share content from a Proximity client wirelessly on the video system, e.g., share your laptop screen. This service is supported by laptops (OS X and Windows). Proximity Mode must be On for this setting to take any effect.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: Enabled
Value space: Enabled/Disabled
  Enabled: Content sharing from a Proximity client is enabled.
  Disabled: Content sharing from a Proximity client is disabled.

Proximity Services ContentShare ToClients
Enable or disable content sharing to Proximity clients. When enabled, Proximity clients will receive the presentation from the video system. You can zoom in on details, view previous content and take snapshots. This service is supported by mobile devices (iOS and Android). Proximity Mode must be On for this setting to take any effect.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: Disabled
Value space: Enabled/Disabled
  Enabled: Content sharing to a Proximity client is enabled.
  Disabled: Content sharing to a Proximity client is disabled.
RoomAnalytics settings

RoomAnalytics PeopleCountOutOfCall

Default value: Off

Value space: Off/On
- Off: The video system counts people only when the system is in a call, or when self-view is on.
- On: The video system counts people as long as the video system is not in standby mode. This includes outside of call, even if self-view is off.

RoomAnalytics PeoplePresenceDetector

The video system has the capability to find whether or not people are present in the room, and report the result in the RoomAnalytics PeoplePresence status. This feature is based on ultrasound. It takes a minimum of 2 minutes to detect whether people are present or not in the room, and it may take up to 2 minutes for the status to change after the room becomes vacant.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR, USER

Default value: Off

Value space: Off/On
- Off: The video system’s status does not show whether or not there are people present in the room.
- On: The video system’s status shows whether or not there are people present in the room.
RoomReset settings

RoomReset Control

This setting is for use with control systems or macros. Macros allow you to write snippets of JavaScript code that can automate parts of your video endpoint, thus creating custom behavior.

When a room has been idle for some time the system can send an event to indicate that the room is ready to be reset.

The events that are sent when this setting is enabled are:

*e RoomReset SecondsToReset: 30
** end
*e RoomReset Reset
** end

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: On

Value space: CameraPositionsOnly/Off/On
  CameraPositionsOnly: Not applicable.
  Off: No RoomReset events will be sent.
  On: The room reset control is enabled and RoomReset events will be sent.
RTP settings

RTP Ports Range Start

Define the first port in the range of RTP ports.
As default, the system is using the ports in the range 2326 to 2486 for RTP and RTCP media data. The minimum range is 100 when RTP Video Ports Range is disabled, and 20 when RTP Video Ports Range is enabled.
If the RTP Video Ports Range is enabled, audio will use the range defined by the RTP Ports Range settings, and other media data will use the range defined by the RTP Video Ports Range settings. The two ranges must not overlap.
A change in the setting will take effect on new calls.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: 2326
Value space: Integer (1024..65438)
  Set the first port in the range of RTP ports.

RTP Ports Range Stop

Define the last port in the range of RTP ports.
As default, the system is using the ports in the range 2326 to 2487 for RTP and RTCP media data. If the RTP Video Ports Range is enabled the system is using the ports in the range 1024 to 65436. The minimum range is 100 when RTP Video Ports Range is disabled, and 20 when RTP Video Ports Range is enabled.
If the RTP Video Ports Range is enabled, audio will use the range defined by the RTP Ports Range settings, and other media data will use the range defined by the RTP Video Ports Range settings. The two ranges must not overlap.
A change in the setting will take effect on new calls.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: 2486
Value space: Integer (1120..65535)
  Set the last port in the range of RTP ports.

RTP Video Ports Range Start

Define the first port in the range of RTP video ports.
If both the start and stop values are set to 0, the RTP Video Ports Range is disabled. To enable it, set the first port to a value between 1024 and 65454 and the last port between 1024 and 65535. The minimum range is 80.
If the RTP Video Ports Range is enabled, audio will use the range defined by the RTP Ports Range settings, and other media data will use the range defined by the RTP Video Ports Range settings. The two ranges must not overlap.
A change in the setting will take effect on new calls.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: 0
Value space: Integer (0, 1024..65454)
  Set the first port in the range of RTP video ports.

RTP Video Ports Range Stop

Define the last port in the range of RTP video ports.
If both the start and stop values are set to 0, the RTP Video Ports Range is disabled. To enable it, set the first port to a value between 1024 and 65454 and the last port between 1024 and 65535. The minimum range is 80.
If the RTP Video Ports Range is enabled, audio will use the range defined by the RTP Ports Range settings, and other media data will use the range defined by the RTP Video Ports Range settings. The two ranges must not overlap.
A change in the setting will take effect on new calls.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: 0
Value space: Integer (0, 1024..65535)
  Set the last port in the range of RTP video ports.
Security settings

Security Audit Logging Mode
Define where to record or transmit the audit logs. The audit logs are sent to a syslog server. When using the External/ExternalSecure modes and setting the port assignment to manual in the Security Audit Server PortAssignment setting, you must also enter the address and port number for the audit server in the Security Audit Server Address and Security Audit Server Port settings.

Requires user role: AUDIT
Default value: Internal

Value space: External/ExternalSecure/Internal/Off
- External: The system sends the audit logs to an external syslog server. The syslog server must support UDP.
- ExternalSecure: The system sends encrypted audit logs to an external syslog server that is verified by a certificate in the Audit CA list. The Audit CA list file must be uploaded to the codec using the web interface. The common_name parameter of a certificate in the CA list must match the IP address of the syslog server, and the secure TCP server must be set up to listen for secure (TLS) TCP Syslog messages.
- Internal: The system records the audit logs to internal logs, and rotates logs when they are full.
- Off: No audit logging is performed.

Security Audit OnError Action
Define what happens when the connection to the syslog server is lost. This setting is only relevant when Security Audit Logging Mode is set to ExternalSecure.

Requires user role: AUDIT
Default value: Ignore

Value space: Halt/Ignore
- Halt: If a halt condition is detected the system codec is rebooted and only the auditor is allowed to operate the unit until the halt condition has passed. When the halt condition has passed the audit logs are re-spoiled to the syslog server. Halt conditions are: A network breach (no physical link), no syslog server running (or incorrect address or port to the syslog server), TLS authentication failed (if in use), local backup (re-spooling) log full.
- Ignore: The system will continue its normal operation, and rotate internal logs when full. When the connection is restored it will again send its audit logs to the syslog server.

Security Audit Server Address
The audit logs are sent to a syslog server. Define the IP address of the syslog server. Only valid IPv4 or IPv6 address formats are accepted. Host names are not supported. This setting is only relevant when Security Audit Logging Mode is set to External or ExternalSecure.

Requires user role: AUDIT
Default value: ""

Value space: String (0..255)
A valid IPv4 address or IPv6 address
Security Audit Server Port
The audit logs are sent to a syslog server. Define the port of the syslog server that the system shall send its audit logs to. This setting is only relevant when Security Audit Server PortAssignment is set to Manual.

Requires user role: AUDIT
Default value: 514

Value space: Integer (0..65535)
Set the audit server port.

Security Audit Server PortAssignment
The audit logs are sent to a syslog server. You can define how the port number of the external syslog server will be assigned. This setting is only relevant when Security Audit Logging Mode is set to External or ExternalSecure. To see which port number is used you can check the Security Audit Server Port status. Navigate to Setup > Status on the web interface or, if on a command line interface, run the command xStatus Security Audit Server Port.

Requires user role: AUDIT
Default value: Auto

Value space: Auto/Manual
Auto: Will use UDP port number 514 when the Security Audit Logging Mode is set to External. Will use TCP port number 6514 when the Security Audit Logging Mode is set to ExternalSecure.
Manual: Will use the port value defined in the Security Audit Server Port setting.

Security Session FailedLoginsLockoutTime
Define how long the system will lock out a user after failed login to a web or SSH session. Restart the system for any change to this setting to take effect.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: 60

Value space: Integer (0..10000)
Set the lockout time (minutes).

Security Session InactivityTimeout
Define how long the system will accept inactivity from the user before he is automatically logged out from a web, Telnet, or SSH session. Restart the system for any change to this setting to take effect.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: 0

Value space: Integer (0..10000)
Set the inactivity timeout (minutes); or select 0 when inactivity should not enforce automatic logout.

Security Session MaxFailedLogins
Define the maximum number of failed login attempts per user for a web or SSH session. If the user exceeded the maximum number of attempts the user will be locked out. 0 means that there is no limit for failed logins.
Restart the system for any change to this setting to take effect.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: 0

Value space: Integer (0..10)
Set the maximum number of failed login attempts per user.

Security Session MaxSessionsPerUser
The maximum number of simultaneous sessions per user is 20 sessions.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: 20

Value space: Integer (1..20)
Set the maximum number of simultaneous sessions per user.
Security Session MaxTotalSessions
The maximum number of simultaneous sessions in total is 20 sessions.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: 20
Value space: Integer (1..20)
Set the maximum number of simultaneous sessions in total.

Security Session ShowLastLogon
When logging in to the system using SSH or Telnet you will see the UserId, time and date of the last session that did a successful login.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
  On: Show information about the last session.
  Off: Do not show information about the last session.
SerialPort settings

SerialPort Mode
Enable/disable the serial port.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
   Off: Disable the serial port.
   On: Enable the serial port.

SerialPort BaudRate
Set the baud rate (data transmission rate, bits per second) for the serial port.
Other connection parameters for the serial port are: Data bits: 8; Parity: None; Stop bits: 1;
Flow control: None.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: 115200
Value space: 9600/19200/38400/57600/115200
   Choose a baud rate from the baud rates listed (bps).

SerialPort LoginRequired
Define if login shall be required when connecting to the serial port.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
   Off: The user can access the codec via the serial port without any login.
   On: Login is required when connecting to the codec via the serial port.
SIP settings

SIP ANAT
ANAT (Alternative Network Address Types) enables media negotiation for multiple
addresses and address types, as specified in RFC 4091.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
  Off: Disable ANAT.
  On: Enable ANAT.

SIP Authentication UserName
This is the user name part of the credentials used to authenticate towards the SIP proxy.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: **
Value space: String (0, 128)
  A valid username.

SIP Authentication Password
This is the password part of the credentials used to authenticate towards the SIP proxy.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: **
Value space: String (0, 128)
  A valid password.

SIP DefaultTransport
Select the transport protocol to be used over the LAN.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Auto
Value space: Auto/TCP/Tls/UDP
  TCP: The system will always use TCP as the default transport method.
  UDP: The system will always use UDP as the default transport method.
  Tls: The system will always use TLS as the default transport method. For TLS
  connections a SIP CA-list can be uploaded to the video system. If no such CA-list is
  available on the system then anonymous Diffie Hellman will be used.
  Auto: The system will try to connect using transport protocols in the following order: TLS,
  TCP, UDP.

SIP DisplayName
When configured the incoming call will report the display name instead of the SIP URI.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: **
Value space: String (0, 550)
  The name to be displayed instead of the SIP URI.
SIP Ice DefaultCandidate
The ICE protocol needs some time to reach a conclusion about which media route to use (up to the first 5 seconds of a call). During this period media for the video system will be sent to the Default Candidate as defined in this setting.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Host
Value space: Host/Rflx/Relay
  Host: Send media to the video system’s private IP address.
  Rflx: Send media to the video system’s public IP address, as seen by the TURN server.
  Relay: Send media to the IP address and port allocated on the TURN server.

SIP Ice Mode
ICE (Interactive Connectivity Establishment, RFC 5245) is a NAT traversal solution that the video systems can use to discover the optimized media path. Thus the shortest route for audio and video is always secured between the video systems.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Auto
Value space: Auto/Off/On
  Auto: ICE is enabled if a TURN server is provided, otherwise ICE is disabled.
  Off: ICE is disabled.
  On: ICE is enabled.

SIP Line
When registered to a Cisco Unified Communications Manager (CUCM) the endpoint may be part of a shared line. This means that several devices share the same directory number. The different devices sharing the same number receive status from the other appearances on the line as defined in RFC 4235.

Note that shared lines are set up by CUCM, not by the endpoint. Therefore do not change this setting manually; CUCM pushes this information to the endpoint when required.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Private
Value space: Private/Shared
  Shared: The system is part of a shared line and is therefore sharing its directory number with other devices.
  Private: This system is not part of a shared line.

SIP ListenPort
Turn on or off the listening for incoming connections on the SIP TCP/UDP ports. If turned off, the endpoint will only be reachable through the SIP registrar (CUCM or VCS).

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
  Off: Listening for incoming connections on the SIP TCP/UDP ports is turned off.
  On: Listening for incoming connections on the SIP TCP/UDP ports is turned on.

SIP Mailbox
When registered to a Cisco Unified Communications Manager (CUCM) you may be offered the option of having a private voice mailbox.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: **
Value space: String (0, 255)
  A valid number or address. Leave the string empty if you do not have a voice mailbox.
SIP MinimumTLSVersion
Set the lowest version of the TLS (Transport Layer Security) protocol that is allowed.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: TLSv1.0
Value space: TLSv1.0/TLSv1.1/TLSv1.2
  TLSv1.0: Support TLS version 1.0 or higher.
  TLSv1.1: Support TLS version 1.1 or higher.
  TLSv1.2: Support TLS version 1.2 or higher.

SIP PreferredIPMedia
Define the preferred IP version for sending and receiving media (audio, video, data). Only applicable when both Network IPStack and Conference CallProtocolIPStack are set to Dual, and the network does not have a mechanism for choosing the preferred IP version.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: IPv4
Value space: IPv4/IPv6
  IPv4: The preferred IP version for media is IPv4.
  IPv6: The preferred IP version for media is IPv6.

SIP PreferredIPSignaling
Define the preferred IP version for signaling (audio, video, data). Only applicable when both Network IPStack and Conference CallProtocolIPStack are set to Dual, and the network does not have a mechanism for choosing the preferred IP version. It also determines the priority of the A/AAAA lookups in DNS, so that the preferred IP version is used for registration.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: IPv4
Value space: IPv4/IPv6
  IPv4: The preferred IP version for signaling is IPv4.

SIP Proxy [1..4] Address
The Proxy Address is the manually configured address for the outbound proxy. It is possible to use a fully qualified domain name, or an IP address. The default port is 5060 for TCP and UDP but another one can be provided.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: 
Value space: String (0..255)
  A valid IPv4 address, IPv6 address or DNS name.

SIP TlsVerify
For TLS connections a SIP CA-list can be uploaded to the video system. This can be done from the web interface.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
  Off: Set to Off to allow TLS connections without verifying them. The TLS connections are allowed to be set up without verifying the x.509 certificate received from the server against the local CA-list. This should typically be selected if no SIP CA-list has been uploaded.
  On: Set to On to verify TLS connections. Only TLS connections to servers, whose x.509 certificate is validated against the CA-list, will be allowed.

SIP Turn DiscoverMode
Define the discover mode to enable/disable the application to search for available Turn servers in DNS. Before making calls, the system will test if port allocation is possible.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
  Off: Set to Off to disable discovery mode.
  On: When set to On, the system will search for available Turn servers in DNS, and before making calls the system will test if port allocation is possible.
SIP Turn DropRflx
DropRflx will make the endpoint force media through the Turn relay, unless the remote endpoint is on the same network.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
  Off: Disable DropRflx.
  On: The system will force media through the Turn relay when the remote endpoint is on another network.

SIP Turn Server
Define the address of the TURN (Traversal Using Relay NAT) server. It is used as a media relay fallback and it is also used to discover the endpoint’s own public IP address.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0..255)
  The preferred format is DNS SRV record (e.g. _turn._udp.<domain>), or it can be a valid IPv4 or IPv6 address.

SIP Turn UserName
Define the user name needed for accessing the TURN server.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0, 128)
  A valid user name.

SIP Turn Password
Define the password needed for accessing the TURN server.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: **
Value space: String (0, 128)
  A valid password.

SIP Type
Enables SIP extensions and special behavior for a vendor or provider.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Standard
Value space: Standard/Cisco
  Standard: Use this when registering to standard SIP Proxy (tested with Cisco TelePresence VCS).
  Cisco: Use this when registering to Cisco Unified Communication Manager.

SIP URI
The SIP URI (Uniform Resource Identifier) is the address that is used to identify the video system. The URI is registered and used by the SIP services to route inbound calls to the system. The SIP URI syntax is defined in RFC 3261.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: **
Value space: String (0..255)
  An address (URI) that is compliant with the SIP URI syntax.
Standby settings

Standby BootAction
Define the camera position after a restart of the codec.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR, USER
Default value: DefaultCameraPosition
Value space: None/DefaultCameraPosition/RestoreCameraPosition
- None: No action.
- RestoreCameraPosition: When the video system restarts, the camera returns to the position that it had before the restart.
- DefaultCameraPosition: When the video system restarts, the camera moves to the factory default position.

Standby Control
Define whether the system should go into standby mode or not.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
- Off: The system will not enter standby mode.
- On: The system will enter standby mode when the Standby Delay has timed out.
Requires the Standby Delay to be set to an appropriate value.

Standby Delay
Define how long (in minutes) the system shall be in idle mode before it goes into standby mode. Requires the Standby Control to be enabled.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: 10
Value space: Integer (1..480)
- Set the standby delay (minutes).

Standby StandbyAction
Define the camera position when going into standby mode.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: PrivacyPosition
Value space: None/PrivacyPosition
- None: No action.
- PrivacyPosition: When the video system enters standby, the camera turns to a sideways position for privacy.

Standby WakeupAction
Define the camera position when leaving standby mode.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR, USER
Default value: RestoreCameraPosition
Value space: None/RestoreCameraPosition/DefaultCameraPosition
- None: No action.
- RestoreCameraPosition: When the video system leaves standby, the camera returns to the position that it had before entering standby.
- DefaultCameraPosition: When the video system leaves standby, the camera moves to the factory default position.

Standby WakeupOnMotionDetection
Automatic wake up on motion detection is a feature that will sense when a person walks into the room. The feature is based on ultrasound detection, and the Proximity Mode setting must be On to make the feature work.
Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
- Off: The wake up on motion detection is disabled.
- On: When people walk into the room the system will automatically wake up from standby.
Standby PowerSave

You can reduce the video system's power consumption during out-of-office hours with this setting. The Power Save mode is an extension to the regular standby mode.

When the video system enters power save mode, power is cut to some of the video system's modules, for example the integrated cameras. The codec and Touch controller behaves like in regular standby. The video system wakes up from power save mode when you tap the touch panel.

Waking up the video system from power save mode takes longer than waking it up from regular standby, because the cameras must boot. You can make calls right away, but there is no outgoing video until the cameras has completed their boot process.

Requires user role: ADMIN

Default value: Never

Value space: Never/OutsideOfficeHours

- Never: The video system will never go into power save mode; only to regular standby.
- OutsideOfficeHours: The video system will go into power save mode during out-of-office hours. You must provide the office hours with the following settings: Time WorkWeek FirstDayOfWeek, Time WorkWeek LastDayOfWeek, Time WorkDay Start, and Time WorkDay End.
SystemUnit settings

SystemUnit Name
Define the system name. The system name will be sent as the hostname in a DHCP request and when the codec is acting as an SNMP Agent.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0, 50)
  Define the system name.

SystemUnit CrashReporting Advanced
If the video system (codec) crashes, the system can automatically send logs to the Cisco Automatic Crash Report tool (ACR) for analyses. The ACR tool is for Cisco internal usage only and not available to customers.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
  Off: The ACR tool will perform standard log analyses.
  On: The ACR tool will perform advanced log analyses.

SystemUnit CrashReporting Mode
If the video system (codec) crashes, the system can automatically send logs to the Cisco Automatic Crash Report tool (ACR) for analyses. The ACR tool is for Cisco internal usage only and not available to customers.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
  Off: No logs will be sent to ACR tool.
  On: The logs will automatically be sent to ACR tool.

SystemUnit CrashReporting Url
If the video system (codec) crashes, the system can automatically send logs to the Cisco Automatic Crash Report tool (ACR) for analyses. The ACR tool is for Cisco internal usage only and not available to customers.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0..255)
  The URL to the Cisco Automatic Crash Report tool (ACR).
Time settings

Time TimeFormat
Define the time format.
Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: 24H
Value space: 24H/12H
   24H: Set the time format to 24 hours.
   12H: Set the time format to 12 hours (AM/PM).

Time DateFormat
Define the date format.
Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: DD_MM_YY
Value space: DD_MM_YY/MM_DD_YY/YY_MM_DD
   DD_MM_YY: The date January 30th 2010 will be displayed: 30.01.10
   MM_DD_YY: The date January 30th 2010 will be displayed: 01.30.10
   YY_MM_DD: The date January 30th 2010 will be displayed: 10.01.30
**Time Zone**

Define the time zone for the geographical location of the video system. The information in the value space is from the tz database, also called the IANA Time Zone Database.

**Requires user role:** ADMIN, INTEGRATOR, USER

**Default value:** Etc/UTC

Value space: Africa/Abidjan, Africa/Addis_Ababa, Africa/Algiers, Africa/Asmara, Africa/Asmera, Africa/Bamako, Africa/Bangui, Africa/Banjul, Africa/Bissau, Africa/Blantyre, Africa/Brazzaville, Africa/Bujumbura, Africa/Cairo, Africa/Casablanca, Africa/Ceuta, Africa/Conakry, Africa/Dakar, Africa/Dar_es_Salaam, Africa/Djibouti, Africa/Douala, Africa/East_Africa, Africa/Eland, Africa/Freetown, Africa/Gaborone, Africa/Harare, Africa/Johannesburg, Africa/Juba, Africa/Kampala, Africa/Khartoum, Africa/Kigali, Africa/Kinshasa, Africa/Lagos, Africa/Liberivale, Africa/Lome, Africa/Luanda, Africa/Lubumbashi, Africa/Lusaka, Africa/Malabo, Africa/Maputo, Africa/Maseru, Africa/Mbabane, Africa/Mogadishu, Africa/Monrovia, Africa/Nairobi, Africa/Ndjamena, Africa/Niamey, Africa/Nouakchott, Africa/ Ouagadougou, Africa/Porto_Novo, Africa/Sao_Tome, Africa/Timbuktu, Africa/Tripoli, Africa/Tunis, Africa/Windhoek, America/Adak, America/Anchorage, America/Anguilla, America/Argentina, America/Argentina/Buenos_Aires, America/Argentina/Catamarca, America/Argentina/ComodRivadavia, America/Argentina/Cordoba, America/Argentina/Jujuy, America/Argentina/La_Rioja, America/Argentina/Mendoza, America/Argentina/Rio_Gallegos, America/Argentina/Salta, America/Argentina/San_Juan, America/Argentina/San_Luis, America/Argentina/Tucuman, America/Argentina/Ushuaia, America/Aruba, America/Asuncion, America/Atikokan, America/Atka, America/Bahia, America/Bahia_Banderas, America/Barbados, America/Belem, America/Beleue, America/Blanc-Sablon, America/Boa_Vista, America/Bogota, America/Boise, America/Buenos_Aires, America/Cambridge_Bay, America/Campo_Grande, America/Cancun, America/Caracas, America/Catamarca, America/Cayenne, America/Cayman, America/Chicago, America/Chihuahua, America/Coral_Harbour, America/Cordoba, America/Costa_Rica, America/Creston, America/Cuiaba, America/Curacao, America/Danmarkshavn, America/Dawson, America/Dawson_Creek, America/Denver, America/Detroit, America/Dominica, America/Edmonton, America/Eirunepen, America/EI_Salvador, America/Ensenada, America/Fort_Nelson, America/Fort_Wayne, America/Fortaleza, America/Glace_Bay, America/Godthab, America/Goose_Bay, America/Grand_Turk, America/Grenada, America/Guadeloupe, America/Guatemala, America/Guyauyil, America/Guyana, America/Halifax, America/Havana, America/Hermosillo, America/Indiana/Indianapolis, America/Indiana/Knox, America/Indiana/Marengo, America/Indiana/Petersburg, America/Indiana/ tell_City, America/Indiana/Vevay, America/Indiana/Vincennes, America/Indiana/Winamac, America/Indianapolis, America/Inuvik, America/Iqaluit, America/Jamaica, America/Jujuy, America/Juneau, America/Kentucky/Louisville, America/Kentucky/Monticello, America/Knox_IN, America/Kralendijk, America/La_Paz, America/Lima, America/Los_Angeles, America/Louisville, America/Lower_Princes, America/Maceio, America/Managua, America/Manaus, America/Maniokot, America/Martinsque, America/Matamoros, America/Mazatlan, America/Mendoza, America/Menominee, America/ Merida, America/Metlakatla, America/Mexico_City, America/Miquelon, America/Moncton, America/Monterrey, America/Montevideo, America/Montreal, America/Montserrat, America/Nassau, America/New_York, America/Nipigon, America/Nome, America/Noronha, America/North_Dakota/Beulah, America/North_Dakota/Center, America/North_Dakota/New_Salem, America/Ojinaga, America/Panama, America/Pangnirtung, America/Paramaribo, America/Phoenix, America/Port-au-Prince, America/Port_of_Spain, America/Porto_Acre, America/Porto_Velho, America/Puerto_Rico, America/Rainy_River, America/Rankin_Inlet, America/Recife, America/Regina, America/Resolute, America/Rio_Branco, America/Rosario, America/Santa_Isabel, America/Santarem, America/Santiago, America/Santo_Domingo, America/Sao_Paulo, America/Scoresbyland, America/Shiprock, America/Sitka, America/St_Barthelemy, America/St_Johns, America/St_Kitts, America/St_Lucia, America/St_Thomas, America/St_Vincent, America/Swift_Current, America/Tegucigalpa, America/Thule, America/Thunder_Bay, America/Tijuana, America/Toronto, America/Tortola, America/Vancouver, America/Virgin, America/Whitehorse, America/Winnipeg, America/Yakutat, America/Yellowknife, Antarctica/Casey, Antarctica/Davis, Antarctica/DumontDUrville, Antarctica/Macquarie, Antarctica/Mawson, Antarctica/McMurdo, Antarctica/Palmer, Antarctica/Rothera, Antarctica/South_Pole, Antarctica/Syowa, Antarctica/Troll, Antarctica/Vostok, Arctic/Longyearbyen, Asia/Aden, Asia/Admaty, Asia/Amman, Asia/Anadyr, Asia/Aqtau, Asia/Aqtobe, Asia/Asghabat, Asia/ Ashkhabad, Asia/Bahrain, Asia/Baku, Asia/Bangkok, Asia/Barnaul, Asia/Beirut, Asia/Bishkek, Asia/Brunei, Asia/Calcutta, Asia/Chita, Asia/Chokhalsan, Asia/Chongqing, Asia/Chungking, Asia/Colombo, Asia/Daacca, Asia/Damascus, Asia/Dhaka, Asia/Dili, Asia/Dubai, Asia/Dushanbe, Asia/Gaza, Asia/Baghdad, Asia/Ho_Chi_Minh, Asia/Hong_Kong, Asia/Hovd, Asia/Irkutsk, Asia/Istanbul, Asia/Jakarta, Asia/Jayapura, Asia/Jerusalem, Asia/Kabul, Asia/Kamchatka, Asia/Karachi, Asia/Kashgar, Asia/Kathmandu, Asia/Kostanay, Asia/Kuantan, Asia/Kuching, Asia/Kuwait, Asia/Macao, Asia/Macau, Asia/Magadan, Asia/Makassar, Asia/Manila, Asia/Muscat, Asia/Nicosia, Asia/Novokuznetsk, Asia/Novosibirsk, Asia/Omsk, Asia/Oral, Asia/Phnom_Penh, Asia/Pontianak, Asia/Pyoongyang, Asia/Qatar, Asia/Qyzylorda, Asia/Rangoon, Asia/Riyadh, Asia/Saigon, Asia/Sakhalin, Asia/Andaman, Asia/Seoul, Asia/Shanghai, Asia/Singapore, Asia/Srednekolymsk, Asia/Taipei, Asia/Tashkent, Asia/Tbilisi, Asia/Tehran, Asia/Tel_Aviv, Asia/Thimbu, Asia/Thimphu, Asia/Tokyo, Asia/Tomsk, Asia/Ujung_Pandang, Asia/Ulanbaatar, Asia/Ulan_Bator, Asia/Urumqi, Asia/Ust-Nera, Asia/Vientiane, Asia/Vladivostok, Asia/Yakutsk, Asia/Yekaterinburg, Asia/Yerevan, Atlantic/ Azores, Atlantic/Bermuda, Atlantic/Canary, Atlantic/Cape_Verde, Atlantic/Faeroe, Atlantic/Faroe, Atlantic/Faroe, Atlantic/Jan_Mayen, Atlantic/Madeira, Atlantic/Reykjavik, Atlantic/South_Georgia, Atlantic/St_Helena, Atlantic/Stanley, Australia/ACT, Australia/Adeleide, Australia/Brisbane, Australia/Broken_Hill, Australia/Canberra, Australia/Currie, Australia/Darwin, Australia/Eucla, Australia/Hobart, Australia/LHI, Australia/Lindeman, Australia/Lord_Howe, Australia/Melbourne, Australia/NSW, Australia/North, Australia/Peorth, Australia/Queensland, Australia/South, Australia/Sydney, Australia/Tasmania, Australia/Victoria, Australia/West, Australia/Yancowinna, Brazil/Acre, Brazil/Beleaa, Brazil/East, Brazil/West, CET, CEST,CDT, Canada/Atlantic, Canada/Central, Canada/Canada-East-Saskatchewan, Canada/Eastern, Canada/Mountain, Canada/Newfoundland, Canada/Pacific, Canada/Saskatchewan, Canada/Yukon, Chile/Continental, Chile/EasterIsland, Cuba, EET, EST, EUT, Egypt, Eire, Etc/GMT, Etc/GMT+0, Etc/GMT+1, Etc/GMT+10, Etc/GMT+11, Etc/GMT+12, Etc/GMT+2, Etc/GMT+3, Etc/
Select a time zone from the list.

Requirements:
- Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
- Default value: "07:00"
- Value space: String (5, 5)

The working day start time, using the 24-hour clock.

**Time WorkDay End**

The Time WorkWeek FirstDayOfWeek, Time WorkWeek LastDayOfWeek, Time WorkDay Start, and Time WorkDay End settings are available so that you can specify when the regular working hours are, and thereby also find the out-of-office hours.

Knowing the out-of-office hours is required if you want to use the power save mode, which is set up using the Standby PowerSave setting.

Requirements:
- Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
- Default value: "18:00"
- Value space: String (5, 5)

The working day end time, using the 24-hour clock.

**Time WorkWeek FirstDayOfWeek**

The Time WorkWeek FirstDayOfWeek, Time WorkWeek LastDayOfWeek, Time WorkDay Start, and Time WorkDay End settings are available so that you can specify when the regular working hours are, and thereby also find the out-of-office hours.

Knowing the out-of-office hours is required if you want to use the power save mode, which is set up using the Standby PowerSave setting.

Requirements:
- Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
- Default value: Monday
- Value space: Monday/Tuesday/Wednesday/Thursday/Friday/Saturday/Sunday

The first day of the working week.
Time WorkWeek LastDayOfWeek

The Time WorkWeek FirstDayOfWeek, Time WorkWeek LastDayOfWeek, Time WorkDay Start, and Time WorkDay End settings are available so that you can specify when the regular working hours are, and thereby also find the out-of-office hours.

Knowing the out-of-office hours is required if you want to use the power save mode, which is set up using the Standby PowerSave setting.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: Friday

Value space: Monday/Tuesday/Wednesday/Thursday/Friday/Saturday/Sunday

The last day of the working week.
UserInterface settings

UserInterface Accessibility IncomingCallNotification
You can enable an incoming call notification with amplified visuals. The screen and Touch 10 will flash red/white approximately once every second (1.75 Hz) to make it easier for hearing impaired users to notice an incoming call. If the system is already in a call the screen will not flash as this will disturb the on-going call, instead you will get a normal notification on screen and touch panel.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR, USER
Default value: Default
Value space: AmplifiedVisuals/Default
  AmplifiedVisuals: Enable the amplified visuals on screen and touch panel when the video system receives a call.
  Default: Enable the default behavior with a notification on screen and touch panel.

UserInterface ContactInfo Type
Choose which type of contact information to show in the user interface.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Auto
Value space: Auto/DisplayName/E164Alias/H320Number/H323Id/IPv4/IPv6/None/SipUri/SystemName
  Auto: Show the address which another system should dial to reach this video system. The address depends on the default call protocol and system registration.
  None: Do not show any contact information.
  IPv4: Show the system’s IPv4 address.
  IPv6: Show the system’s IPv6 address.
  H323Id: Show the system’s H.323 ID (refer to the H323 H323Alias ID setting).
  H320Number: Show the system’s H.320 number as contact information (only supported if used with Cisco TelePresence ISDN Link).
  E164Alias: Show the system’s H.323 E164 Alias as contact information (refer to the H323 H323Alias E164 setting).
  SipUri: Show the system’s SIP URI (refer to the SIP URI setting).
  SystemName: Show the system’s name (refer to the SystemUnit Name setting).
  DisplayName: Show the system’s display name (refer to the SIP DisplayName setting).

UserInterface CustomMessage
A custom message can be displayed, in the lower left side of the screen, in awake mode.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: **
Value space: String (0, 128)
  Add a custom message. Add an empty string to remove a custom message.
UserInterface KeyTones Mode

You can configure the system to make a keyboard click sound effect (key tone) when typing text or numbers.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: On

Value space: Off/On
  Off: There is no key tone sound effect.
  On: The key tone sound effect is turned on.

UserInterface Language

Select the language to be used in the user interface. If the language is not supported, the default language (English) will be used.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: English

Value space: Arabic/Catalan/ChineseSimplified/ChineseTraditional/Czech/Danish/Dutch/English/EnglishUK/Finnish/French/FrenchCanadian/German/Hebrew/Hungarian/Italian/Japanese/Korean/Norwegian/Polish/Portuguese/PortugueseBrazilian/Russian/Spanish/SpanishLatin/Swedish/Turkish
  Select a language from the list.

UserInterface OSD EncryptionIndicator

Define for how long the encryption indicator is shown on screen. The icon for encrypted calls is a locked padlock.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Auto

Value space: Auto/AlwaysOn/AlwaysOff
  Auto: If the call is encrypted, a "Call is encrypted" notification is shown for 5 seconds. Then, an encryption indicator icon is shown for the rest of the call.
  If the call is not encrypted, a "Call is not encrypted" notification is shown for 5 seconds. No encryption indicator icon is shown.
  AlwaysOn: The "Call is encrypted" notification is shown for 5 seconds. Then, an encryption indicator icon is shown for the rest of the call.
  AlwaysOff: The encryption indicator is never displayed on screen.

UserInterface OSD HalfwakeMessage

A custom message can be displayed in the middle of the main screen when the system is in the half wake state. The custom message will replace the default message, which gives instructions how to start using the video system. You can also delete the default message, without adding a custom message.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: * *

Value space: String (0, 128)
  The custom message. An empty string: Restore the default message. A space only: There will be no message at all.
UserInterface OSD Output

Define on which monitor the on-screen information and indicators (OSD) should be displayed.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR

Default value: 1

Value space: Auto/1/2/3
- Auto: The system sends the on-screen information and indicators to the system’s integrated screen. If the system has two integrated screens, the left monitor is used.
- 1-3: The system sends the on-screen information and indicators to the specified output. Choose n to send the on-screen information and indicators to the system’s Output Connector n.

UserInterface Security Mode

This setting allows you to prevent important system information from being exposed in the user interface (drop down menu and Settings panel), for example the contact information and IP addresses of the video system, touch controller, and UCM/VCS registrars. It is important to note that such information is not hidden when navigating further into the Settings panel.

If you want to fully prevent that people without administrator rights can see the contact information, IP addresses, MAC address, serial number, and software version, you must also set the UserInterface SettingsMenu Mode to Locked, and of course have a passphrase for all user accounts with administrator rights.

Requires user role: ADMIN

Default value: Normal

Value space: Normal/Strong
- Normal: IP addresses and other system information are shown on the user interface.
- Strong: Contact information and IP addresses are not displayed on the user interface (drop down menu and Settings panel).

UserInterface SettingsMenu Mode

The Settings panel in the user interface (Touch 10 or on-screen) can be protected by the video system’s admin password. If this password is blank, anyone can access the settings in the Settings menu, and for example factory reset the system. If authentication is enabled, all settings that require authentication have a padlock icon. You will be prompted to enter the administrator’s user name and passphrase when you select the setting. Some settings do not require authentication, they do not have a padlock icon.

Requires user role: ADMIN

Default value: Unlocked

Value space: Locked/Unlocked
- Locked: Authentication with administrator’s username and passphrase is required.
- Unlocked: No authentication is required.

UserInterface Wallpaper

Select a background image (wallpaper) for the video screen when idle.

You may upload a custom wallpaper to the video system using the web interface. The following file formats are supported: BMP, GIF, JPEG, PNG. The maximum file size is 4 MByte. When you use a custom wallpaper, the clock and the list of upcoming meetings are removed from the main display.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR, USER

Default value: Auto

Value space: Auto/Custom/None
- Auto: Use the default wallpaper.
- Custom: Use the custom wallpaper as background image on the screen. If no custom wallpaper is uploaded to the system, the setting will revert to the default value.
- None: There is no background image on the screen.
UserManagement settings

UserManagement LDAP Admin Filter
The LDAP filter is used to determine which users should be granted administrator privileges.
You always have to set either an LDAP Admin Group or an LDAP Admin Filter. An LDAP Admin Filter takes precedence, so if the UserManagement LDAP Admin Filter is set, the UserManagement LDAP Admin Group setting is ignored.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0, 1024)
Refer to the LDAP specification for the syntax of this string. Example: "(|(memberof=CN=admin group, OU=company groups, DC=company, DC=com)
(sAMAccountName=username))"

UserManagement LDAP Admin Group
Members of this AD (Active Directory) group will be given administrator access. This setting is a shorthand for saying (memberOf:1.2.840.113556.1.4.1941:=<group name>).
You always have to set either an LDAP Admin Group or an LDAP Admin Filter. An LDAP Admin Filter takes precedence, so if the UserManagement LDAP Admin Filter is set, the UserManagement LDAP Admin Group setting is ignored.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0..255)
The distinguished name of the AD group. Example: "CN=admin group, OU=company groups, DC=company, DC=com"

UserManagement LDAP Attribute
The attribute used to map to the provided username. If not set, sAMAccountName is used.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0..255)
The attribute name.

UserManagement LDAP BaseDN
The distinguishing name of the entry at which to start a search (base).

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: ""
Value space: String (0..255)
The distinguished name of the base. Example: "DC=company, DC=com"

UserManagement LDAP Encryption
Define how to secure the communication between the video system and the LDAP server.
You can override the port number by using the UserManagement LDAP Server Port setting.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: LDAPS
Value space: LDAPS/None/STARTTLS
LDAPS: Connect to the LDAP server on port 636 over TLS (Transport Layer Security).
None: Connect to LDAP server on port 389 with no encryption.
STARTTLS: Connect to LDAP server on port 389, then send STARTTLS to enable TLS encryption.
UserManagement LDAP MinimumTLSVersion
Set the lowest version of the TLS (Transport Layer Security) protocol that is allowed.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: TLSv1.2
Value space: TLSv1.0/TLSv1.1/TLSv1.2
   - TLSv1.0: Support TLS version 1.0 or higher.
   - TLSv1.1: Support TLS version 1.1 or higher.
   - TLSv1.2: Support TLS version 1.2 or higher.

UserManagement LDAP Mode
The video system supports the use of an LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) server as a central place to store and validate user names and passwords. Use this setting to configure whether or not to use LDAP authentication. Our implementation is tested for the Microsoft Active Directory (AD) service.
If you switch on LDAP Mode, make sure to configure the other UserManagement LDAP settings to suit your setup. Here is a few examples.
Example 1:
   - UserManagement LDAP Mode: On
   - UserManagement LDAP Address: "192.0.2.20"
   - UserManagement LDAP BaseDN: "DC=company, DC=com"
   - UserManagement LDAP Admin Group: "CN=admin group, OU=company groups, DC=company, DC=com"
Example 2:
   - UserManagement LDAP Mode: On
   - UserManagement LDAP Address: "192.0.2.20"
   - UserManagement LDAP BaseDN: "DC=company, DC=com"
   - UserManagement LDAP Admin Filter: "((memberOf=CN=admin group, OU=company groups, DC=company, DC=com)(sAMAccountName=username))"
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On
   - Off: LDAP authentication is not allowed.
   - On: LDAP authentication is allowed.

UserManagement LDAP Server Address
Set the IP address or hostname of the LDAP server.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: *
Value space: String (0..255)
   A valid IPv4 address, IPv6 address or hostname.

UserManagement LDAP Server Port
Set the port to connect to the LDAP server on. If set to 0, use the default for the selected protocol (see the UserManagement LDAP Encryption setting).
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: 0
Value space: Integer (0..65535)
   The LDAP server port number.

UserManagement LDAP VerifyServerCertificate
When the video system connects to an LDAP server, the server will identify itself to the video system by presenting its certificate. Use this setting to determine whether or not the video system will verify the server certificate.
Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: On
Value space: Off/On
   - Off: The video system will not verify the LDAP server’s certificate.
   - On: The video system must verify that the LDAP server’s certificate is signed by a trusted Certificate Authority (CA). The CA must be on the list of trusted CAs that are uploaded to the system in advance. Use the video system’s web interface to manage the list of trusted CAs (see more details in the administrator guide).
Video settings

Video ActiveSpeaker DefaultPIPPosition
Define the position on screen of the active speaker picture-in-picture (PiP). The setting only takes effect when using a video layout where the active speaker is a PiP, i.e. the Overlay layout, or possibly a Custom layout (refer to the Video DefaultLayoutFamily Local setting). The setting takes effect from the next call onwards; if changed during a call, it will have no effect on the current call.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Current

Value space: Current/UpperLeft/UpperCenter/UpperRight/CenterLeft/CenterRight/LowerLeft/LowerRight
  Current: The position of the active speaker PiP will be kept unchanged when leaving a call.
  UpperLeft: The active speaker PiP will appear in the upper left corner of the screen.
  UpperCenter: The active speaker PiP will appear in the upper center position.
  UpperRight: The active speaker PiP will appear in the upper right corner of the screen.
  CenterLeft: The active speaker PiP will appear in the center left position.
  CentreRight: The active speaker PiP will appear in the center right position.
  LowerLeft: The active speaker PiP will appear in the lower left corner of the screen.
  LowerRight: The active speaker PiP will appear in the lower right corner of the screen.

Video DefaultLayoutFamily Local
Select which video layout family to use locally.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Auto

Value space: Auto/Equal/Prominent/Overlay/Single
  Auto: The default layout family, as given in the layout database provided by the system, will be used as the local layout.
  Equal: The Equal layout family will be used as the local layout. All videos have equal size, as long as there is space enough on the screen.
  Prominent: The Prominent layout family will be used as the local layout. The active speaker, or the presentation if present, will be a large picture, while the other participants will be small pictures. Transitions between active speakers are voice switched.
  Overlay: The Overlay layout family will be used as the local layout. The active speaker, or the presentation if present, will be shown in full screen, while the other participants will be small pictures-in-picture (PiP). Transitions between active speakers are voice switched.
  Single: The active speaker, or the presentation if present, will be shown in full screen. The other participants are not shown. Transitions between active speakers are voice switched.
Video DefaultLayoutFamily Remote

Select which video layout family to be used for the remote participants.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Auto

Value space: Auto/Equal/Prominent/Overlay/Single
- Auto: The default layout family, as given by the local layout database, will be used as the remote layout.
- Equal: The Equal layout family will be used as the remote layout. All videos have equal size, as long as there is space enough on the screen.
- Prominent: The Prominent layout family will be used as the remote layout. The active speaker, or the presentation if present, will be a large picture, while the other participants will be small pictures. Transitions between active speakers are voice switched.
- Overlay: The Overlay layout family will be used as the remote layout. The active speaker, or the presentation if present, will be shown in full screen, while the other participants will be small pictures-in-picture (PiP). Transitions between active speakers are voice switched.
- Single: The active speaker, or the presentation if present, will be shown in full screen. The other participants are not shown. Transitions between active speakers are voice switched.

Video DefaultMainSource

Define which video input source to be used as the default main video source when you start a call.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: 1

Value space: 1/2/3/4
- Set the source to be used as the default main video source.

Video Input Connector [1..5] CameraControl CameraId

The camera ID is a unique identifier of the cameras that are connected to the video input. Use the xStatus Camera API command to see the IDs of the different cameras.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Connector n: n   Connector 5: 1

Value space: Connector 1,2,3,4: 1/2/3/4/5/6/7   Connector 5: 1
Select the ID of the camera.

Video Input Connector [1..5] CameraControl Mode

Define whether the camera that is connected to this video input connector can be controlled or not. Note that camera control is not available for Connector 5 (S-video/Composite).

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Connector 1, 2, 3: On   Connector 4, 5: Off

Value space: Connector 1, 2, 3, 4: Off/On   Connector 5: Off
- Off: Disable camera control.
- On: Enable camera control.
Video Input Connector [4..4] DviType

The official DVI standard supports both digital and analog signals. In most cases the default AutoDetect setting can detect whether the signal is analog RGB or digital. However, in some rare cases when DVI-I cables are used (these cables can carry both the analog and digital signals) the auto detection fails. This setting makes it possible to override the AutoDetect and select the correct DVI video input.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: AutoDetect
Value space: AutoDetect/Digital/AnalogRGB/AnalogYPbPr
- AutoDetect: Set to AutoDetect to automatically detect if the signal is analog RGB or digital.
- Digital: Set to Digital to force the DVI video input to Digital when using DVI-I cables with both analog and digital pins and AutoDetect fails.
- AnalogRGB: Set to AnalogRGB to force the DVI video input to AnalogRGB when using DVI-I cables with both analog and digital pins and AutoDetect fails.
- AnalogYPbPr: Set to AnalogYPbPr to force the DVI video input to AnalogYPbPr, as the component (YPbPr) signal cannot be auto detected.

Video Input Connector [1..5] InputSourceType

Select which type of input source is connected to the video input. For single camera systems, the integrated camera is connected to Connector 1. For dual camera systems, the integrated cameras are connected to Connector 1 and Connector 2.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Connector 1,2: camera   Connector 3,4: PC   Connector 5: other
Value space: Connector n: PC/camera/document_camera/mediaplayer/whiteboard/other
- PC: Use this when a computer is connected to the video input.
- camera: Use this when a camera is connected to the video input.
- document_camera: Use this when a document camera is connected to the video input.
- mediaplayer: Use this when a media player is connected to the video input.
- whiteboard: Use this when a whiteboard camera is connected to the video input.
- other: Use this when the other options do not match.

Video Input Connector [1..5] Name

Define a name for the video input connector.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Connector 1: "Camera 1"   Connector 2: "" for single camera systems, "Camera 2" for dual camera systems   Connector 3: "PC (HDMI)"   Connector 4: "PC (VGA)"   Connector 5: ""
Value space: String (0, 50)
Name for the video input connector.

Video Input Connector [1..5] OptimalDefinition Profile

This setting will not take effect if the corresponding Video Input Connector [n] Quality setting is set to Sharpness.

The optimal definition profile reflects the lighting conditions in the video conferencing room and the quality of the camera. The better lighting conditions and the better quality of the camera, the higher the profile. Generally, the Normal or Medium profiles are recommended. However, when the lighting conditions are very good, the High profile can be set in order to increase the resolution for a given call rate. The resolution must be supported by both the calling and called systems.

Use the Video Input Connector [n] OptimalDefinition Threshold60fps setting to set the lowest resolution where 60 fps is allowed. Below this threshold 30 fps is the maximum frame rate.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Medium
Value space: Normal/Medium/High
- Normal: Use this profile for a normally to poorly lit environment. Resolutions will be set rather conservative.
- Medium: Requires good and stable lighting conditions and a good quality video input. For some call rates this leads to higher resolution.
- High: Requires nearly optimal video conferencing lighting conditions and a good quality video input in order to achieve a good overall experience. Rather high resolutions will be used.
Video Input Connector [1..5] OptimalDefinition Threshold 60fps

For each video input, this setting tells the system the lowest resolution where it can transmit 60 fps. So for all resolutions lower than this, the maximum transmitted frame rate would be 30 fps, while above this resolution 60fps would also be possible, if the available bandwidth is adequate.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: 1280_720

Value space: 512_288/768_448/1024_576/1280_720/1920_1080/Never

- 512_288: Set the threshold to 512x288.
- 768_448: Set the threshold to 768x448.
- 1024_576: Set the threshold to 1024x576.
- 1280_720: Set the threshold to 1280x720.
- 1920_1080: Set the threshold to 1920x1080.
- Never: Do not set a threshold for transmitting 60fps.

Video Input Connector [1..4] PresentationSelection

Define how the video system will behave when you connect a presentation source to the video input. In general, any input source can be used as a presentation source; normally, the main camera will not be used as a presentation source.

If the video system is in standby mode, it will wake up when you connect a presentation source. Sharing the presentation with the far end requires additional action (select Share on the user interface) except when this setting is set to AutoShare.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Connector 1,2: Manual   Connector 3,4: OnConnect


- AutoShare: While in a call, the content on the video input will automatically be presented to the far end as well as on the local screen when you connect the cable, or when the source is activated otherwise (for example when a connected computer wakes up from sleep mode). You do not have to select Share on the user interface. If a presentation source is already connected when you make or answer a call, you have to manually select Share on the user interface.

- Desktop: The content on the video input will be presented on the screen when you connect the cable, or when the source is activated otherwise (for example when a connected computer wakes up from sleep mode). This applies both when idle and in a call. Also, the content on the video input will stay on the screen when you leave the call, provided that it was the active input at the time of leaving.

- Manual: The content on the video input will not be presented on the screen until you select Share from the user interface.

- OnConnect: The content on the video input will be presented on screen when you connect the cable, or when the source is activated otherwise (for example when a connected computer wakes up from sleep mode). Otherwise, the behavior is the same as in manual mode.
Video Input Connector [1..5] Quality

When encoding and transmitting video there is a trade-off between high resolution and high frame rate. For some video sources it is more important to transmit high frame rate than high resolution and vice versa. This setting specifies whether to give priority to high frame rate or to high resolution.

If a Precision 60 camera is detected by the video system this setting is automatically set to Motion. If a user changes this setting manually, it will be set back to Motion after a restart or a camera reconnect.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Connector 1,2,5: Motion   Connector 3,4: Sharpness
Value space: Connector n: Motion/Sharpness
  - Motion: Gives the highest possible frame rate. Used when there is a need for higher frame rates, typically when a large number of participants are present or when there is a lot of motion in the picture.
  - Sharpness: Gives the highest possible resolution. Used when you want the highest quality of detailed images and graphics.

Video Input Connector [1..4] RGBQuantizationRange

The devices connected to the video input should follow the rules for RGB video quantization range defined in CEA-861. Unfortunately some devices do not follow the standard and this configuration may be used to override the settings to get a perfect image with any source.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Connector 1,2,3: Auto   Connector 4: Full
Value space: Auto/Full/Limited
  - Auto: RGB quantization range is automatically selected based on video format according to CEA-861-E. CE video formats will use limited quantization range levels. IT video formats will use full quantization range levels.
  - Full: Full quantization range. The R, G, B quantization range includes all code values (0 - 255). This is defined in CEA-861-E.
  - Limited: Limited Quantization Range. R, G, B quantization range that excludes some code values at the extremes (16 - 235). This is defined in CEA-861-E.

Video Input Connector [5] SignalType

Connector 5 can be used for either S-Video or Composite video input format. Use this setting to configure which video format the BNC connector(s) are used for.

Requires user role: ADMIN
Default value: Composite
Value space: Composite/YC
  - Composite: Connector 5 is configured for composite video input. Only the BNC connector that is labeled "Y" is used.
  - YC: Connector 5 is configured for S-Video input. Both BNC connectors ("Y" and "C") are used.

Video Input Connector [1..5] Visibility

Define the visibility of the video input connector in the menus on the user interface.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Connector 1,2,3: IfSignal   Connector 4: Always   Connector 5: Never
Value space: Connector n: Always/IfSignal/Never
  - Always: The menu selection for the video input connector will always be visible on the user interface.
  - IfSignal: Yhe menu selection for the video input connector will only be visible when something is connected to the video input.
  - Never: The input source is not expected to be used as a presentation source, and will not show up on the user interface.
Video Monitors

A monitor role is assigned to each screen using the Video Output Connector [n] MonitorRole setting. The monitor role decides which layout (call participants and presentation) will appear on the screen that is connected to this output. Screens with the same monitor role will get the same layout; screens with different monitor roles will have different layouts.

The monitor layout mode that is set in the Video Monitors setting should reflect the number of different layouts you want in your room setup. Note that some screens can be reserved for presentations.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Auto
Value space: Auto/Single/Dual/DualPresentationOnly/TriplePresentationOnly/Triple

- Auto: The number of screens connected to the video system is automatically detected, and the layout is distributed on the screens according to the monitor role.
- Single: The same layout is shown on all screens.
- Dual: The layout is distributed on screens with monitor role First and Second. If a presentation is part of the layout, all participants in the call are shown on screens with monitor role First, and the presentation is shown on screens with monitor role Second.
- DualPresentationOnly: All participants in the call are shown on screens with monitor role First. If a presentation is part of the layout, the presentation is shown on screens with monitor role Second.
- Triple: The layout is distributed on screens with monitor role First, Second and Third. Screens with monitor role Second are used first, then First, and finally Third. If a presentation is part of the layout, all participants in the call are shown on screens with monitor role First and Second, and the presentation is shown on the screen with monitor role Third.
- TriplePresentationOnly: All participants in the call are distributed on screens with monitor role First and Second. Screens with monitor role Second are used first, then First. If a presentation is part of the layout, the presentation is shown on the screen with monitor role Third.

Video Output Connector [n] CEC Mode

This setting applies only to MX800 Single, Connector [2].

This video output (HDMI) supports Consumer Electronics Control (CEC).

When this setting is On, the system will use CEC to set the screen in standby when the system itself enters standby. Likewise the system will wake up the screen when the system itself wakes up from standby.

Note that the different manufacturers uses different marketing names for CEC, for example Anynet+ (Samsung); Aquos Link (Sharp); BRAVIA Sync (Sony); HDMI-CEC (Hitachi); Kuro Link (Pioneer); CE-Link and Regza Link (Toshiba); RIHD (Onkyo); HDAVI Control, EZ-Sync, VIERA Link (Panasonic); EasyLink (Philips); and NetCommand for HDMI (Mitsubishi).

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Off
Value space: Off/On

- Off: CEC is disabled.
- On: CEC is enabled.
Video Output Connector [1..3] Location HorizontalOffset

HorizontalOffset and VerticalOffset settings are associated with each video output. These settings are used to signal the relative position of the displays that are connected to these outputs.

HorizontalOffset = 0 and VerticalOffset = 0 indicates that the display is positioned in center, both horizontally and vertically. A negative horizontal offset indicates that the monitor is left of center, and a positive horizontal offset indicates that the monitor is right of center. A negative vertical offset indicates that the monitor is below center, and a positive vertical offset indicates that the monitor is above center. The magnitude of the offset indicates how far the display is from center (relative to other displays).

Example: You have two screens side by side. The left screen is on Connector 1 and the right screen on Connector 2. Then the following settings will apply:
- Video Output Connector 1 Location: HorizontalOffset = 0, VerticalOffset = 0
- Video Output Connector 2 Location: HorizontalOffset = 1, VerticalOffset = 0

Example: You have two screens, one below the other. The upper screen is on Connector 1 and the lower screen on Connector 2. Then the following settings will apply:
- Video Output Connector 1 Location: HorizontalOffset = 0, VerticalOffset = 0
- Video Output Connector 2 Location: HorizontalOffset = 0, VerticalOffset = -1

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Connector 1: -1  Connector 2: 0  Connector 3: 1

Value space: Integer (-100..100)
  Range: The value must be between -100 and 100.

Video Output Connector [1..3] Location VerticalOffset

HorizontalOffset and VerticalOffset settings are associated with each video output. These settings are used to signal the relative position of the displays that are connected to these outputs.

HorizontalOffset = 0 and VerticalOffset = 0 indicates that the display is positioned in center, both horizontally and vertically. A negative horizontal offset indicates that the monitor is left of center, and a positive horizontal offset indicates that the monitor is right of center. A negative vertical offset indicates that the monitor is below center, and a positive vertical offset indicates that the monitor is above center. The magnitude of the offset indicates how far the display is from center (relative to other displays).

Example: You have two screens side by side. The left screen is on Connector 1 and the right screen on Connector 2. Then the following settings will apply:
- Video Output Connector 1 Location: HorizontalOffset = 0, VerticalOffset = 0
- Video Output Connector 2 Location: HorizontalOffset = 1, VerticalOffset = 0

Example: You have two screens, one below the other. The upper screen is on Connector 1 and the lower screen on Connector 2. Then the following settings will apply:
- Video Output Connector 1 Location: HorizontalOffset = 0, VerticalOffset = 0
- Video Output Connector 2 Location: HorizontalOffset = 0, VerticalOffset = -1

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Connector n: 0

Value space: Integer (-100..100)
  Range: The value must be between -100 and 100.
Video Output Connector [1..3] MonitorRole

The monitor role describes which video streams will be shown on the screen connected to this video output. Together the Video Monitors setting and the MonitorRole settings for all outputs define which layout (video streams) will be shown on each screen.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Connector n: Auto

Value space: Auto/First/Second/Third/PresentationOnly/Recorder
  - Auto: The system will detect when a screen is connected, and a monitor role (First, Second, Third) that corresponds with the Video Monitors setting will be assigned automatically.
  - First/Second/Third: Define the role of the screen in a multi-screen setup. In a single-screen setup, there is no difference between First, Second and Third.
  - PresentationOnly: Show presentation video stream if active, and nothing else. Screens/outputs with this monitor role are disregarded by the Video Monitors setting.
  - Recorder: Show all participants, including the local main video (self-view). If active, also show the presentation. Screens/outputs with this monitor role are ignored by the Video Monitors setting.

Video Output Connector [n] Resolution

This setting applies only to MX800 Single, Connector [2..3].

Define the resolution and refresh rate for the connected screen.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR, USER
Default value: Connector n: Auto

Value space: Connector n: Auto/1280_720_50/1280_720_60/1920_1080_50/1920_1080_60/1920_1200_50/1920_1200_60
  - Auto: The system will automatically try to set the optimal resolution based on negotiation with the connected monitor.
  - 1280_720_50: The resolution is 1280 x 720, and the refresh rate is 50 Hz.
  - 1280_720_60: The resolution is 1280 x 720, and the refresh rate is 60 Hz.
  - 1920_1080_50: The resolution is 1920 x 1080, and the refresh rate is 50 Hz.
  - 1920_1080_60: The resolution is 1920 x 1080, and the refresh rate is 60 Hz.
  - 1920_1200_50: The resolution is 1920 x 1200, and the refresh rate is 50 Hz.
  - 1920_1200_60: The resolution is 1920 x 1200, and the refresh rate is 60 Hz.

Video Output Connector [n] RGBQuantizationRange

This setting applies only to MX800 Single, Connector [2..3].

Devices connected to an HDMI output should follow the rules for RGB video quantization range defined in CEA-861. Unfortunately some devices do not follow the standard and this configuration may be used to override the settings to get a perfect image with any display. Most HDMI displays expects full quantization range.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Full

Value space: Auto/Full/Limited
  - Auto: RGB quantization range is automatically selected based on the RGB Quantization Range bits (Q0, Q1) in the AVI infoframe. If no AVI infoframe is available, RGB quantization range is selected based on video format according to CEA-861-E.
  - Full: Full quantization range. The R, G, B quantization range includes all code values (0 - 255). This is defined in CEA-861-E.
  - Limited: Limited Quantization Range. R, G, B quantization range that excludes some code values at the extremes (16 - 235). This is defined in CEA-861-E.

Video Presentation DefaultPIPPosition

Define the position on screen of the presentation picture-in-picture (PiP). The setting only takes effect when the presentation is explicitly minimized to a PiP, for example using the user interface. The setting takes effect from the next call onwards; if changed during a call, it will have no effect on the current call.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Current

Value space: Current/UpperLeft/UpperCenter/UpperRight/CenterLeft/CenterRight/LowerLeft/LowerRight
  - Current: The position of the presentation PiP will be kept unchanged when leaving a call.
  - UpperLeft: The presentation PiP will appear in the upper left corner of the screen.
  - UpperCenter: The presentation PiP will appear in the upper center position.
  - UpperRight: The presentation PiP will appear in the upper right corner of the screen.
  - CenterLeft: The presentation PiP will appear in the center left position.
  - CenterRight: The presentation PiP will appear in the center right position.
  - LowerLeft: The presentation PiP will appear in the lower left corner of the screen.
  - LowerRight: The presentation PiP will appear in the lower right corner of the screen.
Video Presentation DefaultSource

Define which video input source to use as a default presentation source. This setting may be used by the API and 3rd party user interfaces. It is not relevant when using the user interfaces provided by Cisco.

Requires user role: ADMIN, USER
Default value: 3
Value space: 1/2/3/4
The video input source to use as default presentation source.

Video Selfview Default FullscreenMode

Define if the main video source (self-view) shall be shown in full screen or as a small picture-in-picture (PiP) after a call. The setting only takes effect when self-view is switched on (see the Video Selfview Default Mode setting).

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Current
Value space: Off/Current/On
  Off: Self-view will be shown as a PiP.
  Current: The size of the self-view picture will be kept unchanged when leaving a call, i.e. if it was a PiP during the call, it remains a PiP after the call; if it was fullscreen during the call, it remains fullscreen after the call.
  On: The self-view picture will be shown in fullscreen.

Video Selfview Default OnMonitorRole

Define which screen/output to display the main video source (self-view) after a call. The value reflects the monitor roles set for the different outputs in the Video Output Connector [n] MonitorRole setting.

The setting applies both when self-view is displayed in full screen, and when it is displayed as picture-in-picture (PiP).

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Current
Value space: Current/First/Second/Third
  Current: When leaving a call, the self-view picture will be retained on the same output as it was during the call.
  First: The self-view picture will be shown on outputs with the Video Output Connector [n] MonitorRole set to First.
  Second: The self-view picture will be shown on outputs with the Video Output Connector [n] MonitorRole set to Second.
  Third: The self-view picture will be shown on outputs with the Video Output Connector [n] MonitorRole set to Third.
Video Selfview Default PIPPosition

Define the position on screen of the small self-view picture-in-picture (PiP) after a call. The setting only takes effect when self-view is switched on (see the Video Selfview Default Mode setting) and fullscreen view is switched off (see the Video Selfview Default FullscreenMode setting).

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: Current

Value space: Current/UpperLeft/UpperCenter/UpperRight/CentreLeft/CentreRight/LowerLeft/LowerRight
- Current: The position of the self-view PiP will be kept unchanged when leaving a call.
- UpperLeft: The self-view PiP will appear in the upper left corner of the screen.
- UpperCenter: The self-view PiP will appear in the upper center position.
- UpperRight: The self-view PiP will appear in the upper right corner of the screen.
- CentreLeft: The self-view PiP will appear in the center left position.
- CentreRight: The self-view PiP will appear in the center right position.
- LowerLeft: The self-view PiP will appear in the lower left corner of the screen.
- LowerRight: The self-view PiP will appear in the lower right corner of the screen.

Video Selfview OnCall Mode

This setting is used to switch on self-view for a short while when setting up a call. The Video Selfview OnCall Duration setting determines for how long it remains on. This applies when self-view in general is switched off.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: On

Value space: Off/On
- Off: Self-view is not shown automatically during call setup.
- On: Self-view is shown automatically during call setup.

Video Selfview OnCall Duration

This setting only has an effect when the Video Selfview OnCall Mode setting is switched On. In this case, the number of seconds set here determines for how long self-view is shown before it is automatically switched off.

Requires user role: ADMIN, INTEGRATOR
Default value: 10

Value space: Integer (1..60)
Range: Choose for how long self-view remains on. The valid range is between 1 and 60 seconds.
Experimental settings

The Experimental settings are for testing only and should not be used unless agreed with Cisco. These settings are not documented and WILL change in later releases.
Appendices
How to use Touch 10

The Touch 10 user interface and its use are described in full detail in the User guide for the video system.

- Tap the system name or contact information to access System Information, Settings, Restart and Factory reset. You can also activate Call forwarding, Standby, and Do not disturb modes.
- Tap Call to make a call, and to invoke the Favorites, Directory and Recents contact lists.
- Tap Messages to invoke the voice mail system, if available.
- Tap ? to contact Help desk or access other facility services, if available.
- Tap Camera icon to activate self-view and camera control.
- Tap Share to start sharing content and to conduct presentations.
- Tap Lights & Sources button to turn off/on main lights.
- Tap Microphone button to mute and unmute microphones.
- Tap Message, Call, Share and Lights & Sources icons for quick access.
- Press and hold the left side of the Volume button to decrease the loudspeaker volume and the right side to increase the volume.

Time of day.
Set up remote monitoring

Requirement:
- `RemoteMonitoring` option

Remote monitoring is useful when you want to control the video system from another location.

Snapshots from input sources appear in the web interface, so you can check the camera view and control the camera without being in the room.

If enabled, snapshots are refreshed automatically approximately every 5 seconds.

Check whether or not the video system has the `RemoteMonitoring` option

1. Sign in to the web interface.
2. Check the Home page to see if `RemoteMonitoring` is on the list of Installed options.
   - If not on the list, remote monitoring is not available.

Enable remote monitoring

Install the `RemoteMonitoring` option key. How to install option keys are described in the Add option keys chapter.

PLEASE BE AWARE THAT IF YOU ENABLE THE REMOTE MONITORING OPTION YOU MUST MAKE SURE THAT YOU COMPLY WITH LOCAL LAWS AND REGULATIONS WITH REGARD TO PRIVACY AND PROVIDE ADEQUATE NOTICE TO USERS OF THE SYSTEM THAT THE SYSTEM ADMINISTRATOR MAY MONITOR AND CONTROL THE CAMERA AND SCREEN. IT IS YOUR RESPONSIBILITY TO COMPLY WITH PRIVACY REGULATIONS WHEN USING THE SYSTEM AND CISCO DISCLAIMS ALL LIABILITY FOR ANY UNLAWFUL USE OF THIS FEATURE.

About snapshots

Local input sources

Snapshots of the local input sources of the video system appear on the Call Control page.

Snapshots appear both when the video system is idle, and when in a call.

Far end snapshots

When in call, you may also see snapshots from the far end camera. It does not matter whether or not the far end video system has the `RemoteMonitoring` option.

Far end snapshots are not displayed if the call is encrypted.
Access call information and answer a call while using the web interface

Notification of an incoming call
Click the Call indicator to open the Call Control page, where you can accept or decline the call.

The system is in a call
Hover the mouse over the call indicator to see the number of active calls.

Call indicator
The call indicator is present to notify you about an incoming call, and to show when the system is in a call.
If the system is idle, there is no call indicator.

Control the call
Relevant control buttons are present on the Call Control page. Use the buttons to:
- Show call details
- Put the call on hold
- Answer the call
- Disconnect the call
Place a call using the web interface (page 1 of 2)

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Call Control.

Place a call

Even if the web interface is used to initiate the call, it is the video system (display, microphones and loudspeakers) that is used for the call; it is not the PC running the web interface.

1. Navigate the Favorites, Directory or Recents lists to find the correct entry; or enter one or more characters in the Search or Dial field*. Click the correct contact name.

2. Click Call in the contact card.

Alternatively, enter the complete URI or number in the Search and Dial field. Then click the Call button that appears next to the URI or number.

Send DTMF tones

Click to open a key pad that you can use if your application requires DTMF (dual-tone multi-frequency) signaling.

Show/hide call details

Click the information button to show details about the call.

Click the button again to hide the information.

Hold and resume a call

Use the button next to a participant’s name to put that participant on hold.

To resume the call, use the button that is present when a participant is on hold.

End a call

If you want to terminate a call or conference, click Disconnect all. Confirm your choice in the dialog that appears.

To disconnect just one participant in a conference, click the button for that participant.

* When searching, matching entries from the Favorites, Directory and Recents lists will be listed as you type.
Place a call using the web interface (page 2 of 2)

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Call Control.

Calling more than one

A point-to-point video call (a call involving two parties only) can be expanded to include one more participant on audio-only.

If your system is using the optional built-in MultiSite feature, up to five participants, yourself included, can join the video call (conference). In addition, one more participant can join on audio-only.

Follow the same procedure to call the next conference participant as you did when calling the first participant.

Calling more than one using a conference bridge (CUCM ad hoc conferencing) is not supported from the web interface, even if it is supported by the video system itself.

Adjust the volume

Mute the microphone

Click Microphone: On to mute the microphone. Then the text changes to Microphone: Off.

Click Microphone: Off to unmute.

Volume down

Volume up
Share content using the web interface

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Call Control.

Share content

1. Choose which content source to share in the Presentation source drop down list.
2. Click Start Presentation. Then the text changes to Stop Presentation.

Stop content sharing:
Click the Stop Presentation button that is present while sharing.

Presentation source drop down list
Choose which input source to share, from the drop down list.

Snapshot area
Shows snapshots of the selected presentation source.
Only available on video systems that have the Remote Monitoring option.

About content sharing
You can connect a presentation source to one of the video inputs of your video system. Most often a PC is used as presentation source, but other options may be available depending on your system setup.

While in a call you can share content with the other participant(s) in the call (far end).
If you are not in a call, the content is shown locally.
Local layout control

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Call Control.

![Layout control interface]

Change the layout

Click Layout, and choose your preferred layout in the window that opens.

The set of layouts to choose from depends on the system configuration.

You may change the layout both when idle and in a call.

About layouts

The term layout is used to describe the various ways presentations and videos can appear on the screens. Different types of meetings may require different layouts.

The number of call or conference participants are reflected in the available choices.
Control a local camera

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Call Control.

Prerequisites
- The Video > Input > Connector n > CameraControl > Mode setting is switched On.
- The camera has pan, tilt or zoom functionality.
- Speaker tracking is switched Off.

Move the camera using the pan/tilt/zoom controls
Camera control is not available when speaker tracking is switched on.

1. Choose which camera to control in the Main source drop down list.
2. Click the camera icon to open the camera control window.
   Video snapshots from the room are only displayed for video systems that have the Remote Monitoring option.
3. Use the left and right arrows to pan the camera; the up and down arrows to tilt it; and + and - to zoom in and out.
   Only relevant controls appear in the window.
4. Click Close to close the window.

Move the camera to a preset position
1. Choose which camera to control in the Main source drop down list.
2. Click Presets... to open a list of available presets.
   If no presets are defined, the button is disabled and named No presets.
3. Click a preset’s name to move the camera to the preset position.
4. Click Close to close the window.

You cannot use the web interface to define a preset; you should use the Touch controller.
When you select a preset, speaker tracking will be switched off automatically.

Main source drop down list
Choose which camera to control from the drop down list.

Snapshot area
Shows snapshots of the selected main input source.
Only available on video systems that have the Remote Monitoring option.

Automatically refresh snapshots
Control a far end camera

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Call Control.

Prerequisites
While in a call, you can control the remote participant’s camera (far end) provided that:

- The Conference > FarEndControl > Mode setting is switched On on the far end video system.
- The far end camera has pan, tilt or zoom functionality. Only the relevant controls will appear.
- Speaker tracking is not switched On on the far end camera.
- The local video system has the Remote Monitoring option.

Control the remote participant’s camera

1. Click the camera icon to open the remote camera control window.

2. Use the left and right arrows to pan the camera; the up and down arrows to tilt it; and + and - to zoom in and out.

   If you are not allowed to control the far end camera, the controls will not appear in the image.

   If the call is encrypted, the far end snapshot behind the controls are not displayed.
Packet loss resilience - ClearPath

ClearPath introduces several mechanisms for advanced packet loss resilience. These mechanisms increase the experienced quality when you use your video system in an error prone environment.

ClearPath is a Cisco proprietary protocol. All endpoints running CE software support ClearPath.

If the involved endpoints and infrastructure elements support ClearPath, all packet loss resilience mechanisms are used in point-to-point connections (including hosted conferences). Only some of the mechanisms are supported in MultiSite conferences.
Room analytics

The room analytics feature use several variables from the conference room and re-uses them to analyze the room utilization over time or per call.

People presence detection

The video system has the capability to find whether or not people are present in the room. It takes a minimum of two minutes to detect whether people are present or not in the room. After the room becomes vacant, it may take up to two minutes for the status to change.

This feature is based on ultrasound. It will not keep record of who was in the room, only whether or not there are people present in the room.

You can turn on/off the people presence detection from the web interface. Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Setup > Configuration > RoomAnalytics > PeoplePresenceDetector.

Status

You may see the status at a given moment of people’s presence. Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Setup > Status > RoomAnalytics.
Customize the video system's Touch 10 user interface

You can customize the user interface to allow control of peripherals in a meeting room, for example lights and blinds, or to modify the video system’s behavior by triggering macros. This allows for the powerful combination of a control system’s functionality and the video system’s user-friendly user interface (Touch 10).

**In-room control architecture**

You need a Cisco video system with a Touch 10 controller, and a control system. The control system may be a third-party system, such as Crestron or AMX, with hardware drivers for peripherals. It is the control system, not the video system, that controls the peripherals.

When you program the control system you must use the video system’s API (events and commands) in order to connect with the controls on the video system’s user interface.

The video system’s macro framework may also serve as a control system. In this case the control system can use the video system’s API to trigger all sorts of local functionality: Speed dial, language selection, customized system reset, and much more.

Consult the **CE Customization guide** for full details about how to design custom user interface panels (in-room control panels) using the In-Room Control editor, and how to use the video system’s API to program the in-room controls. Go to:

► [https://www.cisco.com/go/in-room-control-docs](https://www.cisco.com/go/in-room-control-docs)
Customize the video system's Touch 10 user interface (page 2 of 2)

The In-Room Control editor

Free of charge editor

An easy to use drag-and-drop editor, which you should use to compose the custom user interface panels (in-room control panels), comes free of charge with the video system's software.

Sign in* to the web interface, and navigate to Integration > In-Room Control.

- Click Launch Editor to launch the editor directly from the video system’s web interface.

  You can push a new in-room control panel to the video system, and see the result immediately on the Touch controller.

- Click Download Editor to download a stand-alone version that you can run locally on your browser from your hard drive.

  Then you can compose your custom interfaces without being connected to a video system. You can export and import to file to move your work between your local version and the video system later.

Preview function

The editor also provides a preview function, which allows you to see how the custom interfaces will appear on the user interface.

The preview function is also a complete software version of your custom (in-room control) panels, so clicking the controls will result in the same actions as selecting them on the real Touch 10 user interface.

Therefore, you can use the preview function to test your integrations without having a real Touch 10 user interface available. You can also use the video system's in-room controls from a remote location.

The room simulator

You can use the room simulator to visualise how the in-room controls on the Touch 10 user interface changes the state of the room.

⚠️ Back up any existing in-room configuration you may have before you export the simulator configuration to the video system. The simulator configuration will replace the existing configuration on the video system.

Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Integration > In-Room Control.

- Click Launch Simulator to open a room simulator in your browser.

  The room simulator contains a predefined in-room control configuration that you can export to the video system. Then you can control the simulator’s virtual meeting room from your real Touch 10 user interface.

- Click Load simulator config to export the simulator configuration to the video system.

---

* You need a user that holds the ROOMCONTROL, INTEGRATOR, or ADMIN user roles in order to access the In-Room Control editor and the API commands that you need when programming the control system.
Customize the video system's behavior using macros

With macros, you can create your own snippets of code that run on the video system. The language is JavaScript / ECMAScript 6 with support for features such as arrow functions, promises and classes.

The macro framework allows an integrator to write scripts that tailor a video system's behavior to suite an individual customer's requirements. The integrators can, for example, implement their own features or variations of features, automate specific configurations or re-configurations, and create custom tests and monitoring functions.

By combining the use of macros and creation of a custom user interface panel (formerly referred to as in-room control panel), you can amend the user interface (Touch 10) to trigger customized local functionality. For examples:

- Add speed dialling buttons
- Add a button for room reset, which set all configurations back to your preferred default setup

Consult the CE Customization guide for details about macros and how to use the video system's built in Macro editor. Go to:

► https://www.cisco.com/go/in-room-control-docs

Allow using macros on the video system

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Setup > Configuration.

- Set Macros > Mode to On.

If you try to launch the Macro editor while this setting is Off, a pop-up message appears. If you respond by tapping Enable Macros, the Macros > Mode setting will automatically change to On, and the editor will launch.

Launch the macro editor

Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to Integration > Macro Editor.

We don't offer a stand-alone version of the editor that you can use to work offline.

The Macro editor

The Macro editor is a powerful tool where you can:

- Load our code examples, which you can modify, use as is, or use as inspiration when writing your own macros.
- Read our detailed macro scripting tutorial, which also explains the code examples in more detailed.
- Write your own macros, and upload them to the video system.
- Enable/Disable individual macros.
- Check in an embedded Log Console what happens when you run a macro.

* You need a user that holds the ADMIN user role in order to access the Macro editor.
Input source composition

You can use the video system’s API to combine up to four input sources in a single main video stream.

The maximum number of different input sources depends on the video system:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Video system</th>
<th>Maximum number of different input sources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Room Kit, SX20, MX200 G2, MX300 G2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Codec Plus, Room 55, Room 55 Dual, Room 70</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SX80, MX700, MX800, Codec Pro, Room 70 G2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SX10, DX70, DX80</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source composition

Composition layout

You can choose between two layouts:

• Equal
• PIP (only available when composing two input sources)

The layouts are fixed, so you cannot modify the image sizes, or move the PIP.

The composition and layout can be modified at any time, both in call and outside of call.

Selfview

Selfview shows the same composed image that is being sent to the far end.

Individual camera control

You can control individual cameras using API commands (`xCommand Camera` *), but you cannot use the controls on the user interface.

When you select a camera in the user interface, the main video stream will automatically switch from the composed video stream to the single stream from the chosen camera.

Change compositions and layouts on demand

Input source composition is only available using API commands; we don’t provide a dedicated user interface for it.

To be able to easily change compositions and layouts on demand, we recommend that you use macros and create a custom user interface panel (in-room control panel) for it.

Layouts

Equal

Number of sources: 2

Number of sources: 3

Number of sources: 4

Picture-in-Picture (PIP)

Number of sources: 2
Input source composition (page 2 of 2)

API command

\texttt{xCommand Video Input SetMainVideoSource}
\begin{verbatim}
ConnectorId: <1..n> SourceId: <1..m>
Layout: <Equal, PIP>
\end{verbatim}

where

The input source can be identified by either the physical connector that it is connected to (ConnectorId), or by the logical source identifier (SourceId). There cannot be a mix of different types of identifiers in the same command; use either ConnectorId or SourceId. You can find these identifiers in the Video Input Connector and Video Input Source statuses.

The difference between the Equal and PIP layouts (Layout) are shown in the sidebar.

Refer to the API-guide for more details.

Examples

\texttt{xCommand Video Input SetMainVideoSource ConnectorId: 1 ConnectorId: 2 ConnectorId: 3 ConnectorId: 4 Layout: Equal}

\texttt{xCommand Video Input SetMainVideoSource ConnectorId: 1 ConnectorId: 2 Layout: Equal}

\texttt{xCommand Video Input SetMainVideoSource SourceId: 1 SourceId: 2 Layout: PIP}
Presentation source composition

You can use the video system’s API to combine up to four presentation sources in a single video stream.

The maximum number of different presentation sources depends on the video system:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Video system</th>
<th>Maximum number of different presentation sources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Room Kit, SX20, MX200 G2, MX300 G2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Codec Plus, Room 55, Room 55 Dual, Room 70</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SX80, MX700, MX800, Codec Pro, Room 70 G2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SX10, DX70, DX80</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can only share sources that has been shared through a cable (DVI, VGA, HDMI - depending on the video system).

Source composition

Composition layout

The presentation sources will always be composed in Equal layout. You cannot modify the image sizes.

You can change the number of sources at any time, both in call and outside of call.

The order in which the sources appear on the screen depends on the order they have in the command; starting from upper left, ending at bottom right.

Change compositions and layouts on demand

Presentation source composition is only available using API commands; we don't provide a dedicated user interface for it.

To be able to easily change compositions and layouts on demand, we recommend that you use macros and create a custom user interface panel (in-room control panel) for it.

Layouts

Equal

Number of sources: 2

Number of sources: 3

Number of sources: 4
Presentation source composition (page 2 of 2)

API command

\texttt{xCommand Presentation Start}
\hspace{1em} \texttt{ConnectorId: \textless 1..n\textgreater}
\hspace{1em} \texttt{PresentationSource: \textless 1..m\textgreater}
\hspace{1em} \texttt{Instance: \textless 1..p\textgreater}
\hspace{1em} \texttt{SendingMode: \{LocalRemote, LocalOnly\}}

where

The input source can be identified by either the physical connector that it is connected to (\texttt{ConnectorId}), or by the logical source identifier (\texttt{PresentationSource}). There cannot be a mix of different types of identifiers in the same command; use either \texttt{ConnectorId} or \texttt{PresentationSource}. You can find these identifiers in the Video Input Connector and Video Input Source statuses.

Refer to the API-guide for more details.

Examples

\texttt{xCommand Presentation Start PresentationSource: 1 PresentationSource: 2 PresentationSource: 3 PresentationSource: 4}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\rowcolor[HTML]{C0C0C0}
1 & 2 \\
\hline
3 & 4 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

\texttt{xCommand Presentation Start ConnectorId: 1 ConnectorId: 2 ConnectorId: 3 ConnectorId: 4}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\rowcolor[HTML]{C0C0C0}
1 & 2 \\
\hline
3 & 4 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

\texttt{xCommand Presentation Start PresentationSource: 1 PresentationSource: 2}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\rowcolor[HTML]{C0C0C0}
1 & 2 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

\texttt{xCommand Presentation Start ConnectorId: 1 ConnectorId: 2}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\rowcolor[HTML]{C0C0C0}
1 & 2 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}
**Manage startup scripts**

Sign in to the web interface, and navigate to *Integration > Startup Scripts*.

A startup script contains commands (xCommand) and configurations (xConfiguration) that will be executed as part of the start up procedure. A few commands and configurations cannot be placed in a startup script, for example xCommand SystemUnit Boot. It is not possible to save a script that contains illegal commands and configurations.

Syntax and semantics for xCommand and xConfiguration are explained in the API guide for the product.

**About startup scripts**

**List of startup scripts**

You can create one or more startup scripts. A green dot appears next to an active startup script; a red ring appears next to an inactive startup script.

If you have more than one startup script, they will run in the order from top to bottom of the list.

**Create a startup script**

1. Click **Create new**.
2. Enter a name for the startup script in the title input field.
3. Enter the commands (xConfiguration or xCommand) in the command input area. Start each command on a new line.
4. Click **Save**.
5. Click **On** to activate the startup script.

If you want to use an existing script as a starting point for editing, select that script and click **Copy**.

**Run a startup script immediately**

1. Select the startup script from the list.
2. Click **Run**.

Both active and inactive startup scripts can be run immediately.

**Activate or deactivate a startup script**

1. Select the startup script from the list.
2. Click **On** to activate, or **Off** to deactivate a script.

Active startup scripts will run every time the video system starts up.

**Delete a startup script**

1. Select the startup script from the list.
2. Click **Delete**.
Access the video system’s XML files

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Integration > Developer API.

The XML files are part of the video system’s API. They structure information about the system in a hierarchy.

- **Configuration.xml** contains the current system settings (configuration). These settings are controlled from the web interface or from the API (Application Programmer Interface).
- The information in **status.xml** is constantly updated by the video system to reflect system and process changes. The status information is monitored from the web interface or from the API.
- **Command.xml** contains an overview of the commands available to instruct the system to perform an action. The commands are issued from the API.
- **Valuespace.xml** contains an overview of all the value spaces of system settings, status information, and commands.

Open an XML file
Click the file name to open the XML file.

About the API

The application programming interface (API) is a tool for integration professionals and developers working with the video system. The API is described in detail in the API guide for the video system.
Execute API commands and configurations from the web interface

Sign in to the web interface and navigate to Integration > Developer API.

Commands (xCommand) and configurations (xConfiguration) can be executed from the web interface. Syntax and semantics are explained in the API guide for the video system.

Execute API commands and configurations

1. Enter a command (xCommand or xConfiguration), or a sequence of commands, in the text area.
2. Click Execute to issue the command(s).

About the API

The application programming interface (API) is a tool for integration professionals and developers working with the video system. The API is described in detail in the API guide for the video system.
Notes regarding screen technology

Cisco are using professional screens in MX700 and MX800. These screens have longer lifetime and operating hours than consumer screens.

MX700 and MX800 use LED edge backlit LCD panels with Vertical Alignment technology. This allows for high contrast ratios and fast response times. The nature of all LCD panels is that the contrast ratio drops rapidly with an increasing viewing angle (both horizontally and vertically). Color coordinates will also change with increased viewing angle resulting in some color shift. LCD panels may therefore appear to have different shades when comparing images viewed perpendicular and at an angle to the screen.

MX700 and MX800 screens are individually color calibrated during manufacturing using spectrometers. This ensures that all screens shipped from the manufacturing site are equal with respect to color reproduction, when judged on axis. The calibration process has some tolerances, but this is considered to be hard, if not impossible, to judge with the naked eye. A small change in the viewing angle will to a larger extent affect the perceived color differences.

Over time the screen's LED backlights will drift. This is valid for all LCD panels with LED backlight. Luminance will decay resulting in darker image over time. For the LCD panels in MX700 and MX800, the luminance will be halved after 50000 operating hours.
GPIO interface

The codec within the video system has a General Purpose Input/Output (GPIO) port in the form of a 6 pin Euroblock connector.

⚠️ Some MX700/MX800 systems have been shipped with the label for the pins of the GPIO port in reverse order.

Correct GPIO labeling.

Incorrect GPIO labeling.

Remove the left side cover to get access to the connectors.
Serial interface

The video system has a standard COM-port for serial communication. Connect a standard 9-pin RS-232 serial cable to the COM-port. If the computer does not have a standard serial connector, you need an RS-232 adapter on the computer side.

The serial connection can be used without an IP-address, DNS, or a network.

Parameters:
- Baud rate: Configurable. Default 115200 bps
- Data bits: 8
- Parity: None
- Stop bit: 1
- Hardware flow control: Off

Video system settings

Serial communication is enabled by default. Use the following configuration to change the behavior:

```
SerialPort > Mode
```

For security reasons, you are asked to sign in before using the serial interface. Use the following setting to change the behavior:

```
SerialPort > LoginRequired
```

We recommend using the default baud rate because the video system may give much feedback. Use the following setting if you want to adjust the baud rate.

```
SerialPort > BaudRate
```

Restart the video system when you have made changes to the serial port settings.

If your video system is provisioned by CUCM, the serial port settings should be configured from CUCM.
Open TCP Ports

The web server within the codec prohibit or restrict the use of nonsecure or unnecessary ports, protocols, modules, and/or services. Some ports are open or closed by default.

TCP 22: SSH
You can close the port by setting SSH mode to Off.
NetworkServices SSH Mode: Off/On

TCP 80: HTTP
You can close the port by setting HTTP mode to Off or HTTPS.
NetworkServices HTTP Mode: HTTP+HTTPS/HTTPS/Off

TCP 443: HTTPS
You can close the port by setting HTTP mode to Off.
NetworkServices HTTP Mode: HTTP+HTTPS/HTTPS/Off

TCP 4043: Remote pairing software download
You can close the port by setting remote pairing for the Touch panel to Off.
Peripherals Pairing CiscoTouchPanels RemotePairing: Off/On

TCP 4045: Remote pairing version information
You can close the port by setting remote pairing for the Touch panel to Off.
Peripherals Pairing CiscoTouchPanels RemotePairing: Off/On

TCP 4051: Remote pairing session connection
The port is only available (and open) when a Touch panel is remote paired with the video system. You can close the port by setting remote pairing for the Touch panel to Off.
Peripherals Pairing CiscoTouchPanels RemotePairing: Off/On

TCP 4052: Remote pairing and forwarding
The port is only available (and open) when a Touch panel is remote paired with the video system. You can close the port by setting remote pairing for the Touch panel to Off.
Peripherals Pairing CiscoTouchPanels RemotePairing: Off/On

TCP 4053: Remote pairing port
You can close the port by setting remote pairing for the Touch panel to Off.
Peripherals Pairing CiscoTouchPanels RemotePairing: Off/On

TCP 5060/5061: SIP listen ports
The SIP listen ports are open by default. The SIP listen ports are disabled by the Cisco UCM (Unified Communication Manager). You can close the ports by setting the SIP listen ports to Off.
SIP ListenPort: Off/On

The system settings are configured from the Setup > Configuration page on the web interface. Open a web browser and enter the IP address of the video system then sign in.
Get a new HTTPFeedback address from TMS

When a video system is added to Cisco TelePresence Management Suite (TMS), it is automatically configured to send information (events) back to TMS. The video system receives the address that these events should be sent to from TMS (HTTPFeedback address). If this address is absent or misconfigured, the video system cannot send events to TMS.

Missing response to events

If the video system does not receive a response to an event, it will retry sending it to the HTTPFeedback address up to 10 times at 1 second intervals.

If the video system does not receive a response to any of the retries, the endpoint deletes the HTTPFeedback address and cannot send events to TMS anymore.

This causes loss of Call Detail Records (CDR) on TMS.

Get a new HTTPFeedback address from TMS

In order to get a new address to send events to, you must restart the video system and wait for the next management address push from TMS (scheduled or triggered by the TMS administrator).
Technical specification (page 1 of 4)

PRODUCT SPECIFICATION

SOFTWARE COMPATIBILITY

MX700 and MX800 Single:
- Cisco TelePresence Software Version TC7.1.2 or later
- Collaboration Endpoint Software Version 8.0 or later

MX800 Dual:
- Cisco TelePresence Software Version TC7.3.1 or later
- Collaboration Endpoint Software Version 8.0 or later

COMPONENTS

Fully integrated unit including:
- Codec
- Display
- Camera (2 cameras as option)
- Loudspeakers
- Cisco TelePresence Table Microphone 60 (two microphones are included in base package)
- Cables included: DVI-I-to-VGA cable with Euroblock connector, 2.5-mm jack audio cable, HDMI to HDMI, LAN cable, and power cable

DISPLAY

MX700:
- Two 55 inch TFT-LCD monitors, edge LED backlight
- Resolution: 1920 x 1080

MX800 Single:
- One 70 inch TFT-LCD monitor, edge LED backlight
- Resolution: 1920 x 1080

MX800 Dual:
- Two 70 inch TFT-LCD monitor, edge LED backlight
- Resolution: 1920 x 1080

PC AND SECOND-SOURCE VIDEO INPUT

- DVI-I
- Two HDMI (if Dual camera option is installed, only one HDMI)
- One standard definition (composite or S-video)

SUPPORTED PC INPUT RESOLUTIONS

- SVGA (800 x 600) up to 1080p (1920 x 1080)

CAMERA OVERVIEW

- 20x total zoom (10x optical, 2x digital zoom)
- Motorized +17.5°/-14.5° tilt, +58.5°/-90° pan
- 80° horizontal field of view
- 48.8° vertical field of view
- F 1.5
- Resolutions: 1080p60 and 720p60
- Automatic or manual focus, brightness, and white balance
- Far-end camera control
- Camera control over Ethernet
- Focus distance 3.28 ft (1 m) to infinity

AUDIO SYSTEM

Integrated multichannel loudspeaker system

MX700 with single camera:
- 12 loudspeakers in total
- 10 closed box full range loudspeakers
- 2 balanced dual driver folded bass horns (one behind each screen)
- 400W amplifier system
- Individual digital processing for each speaker
- Frequency response 65-18000Hz ±3dB
- Frequency response 55-20000Hz ±10dB
- Max continuous sound pressure 100dB @ 1 m

MX700 with dual camera:
- 11 loudspeakers in total
- 9 closed box full range loudspeakers
- 2 balanced dual driver folded bass horns (one behind each screen)
- 400W amplifier system
- Individual digital processing for each speaker
- Frequency response 65-18000Hz ±3dB
- Frequency response 55-20000Hz ±10dB
- Max continuous sound pressure 100dB @ 1 m

MX800 Single with single camera:
- 7 loudspeakers in total
- 6 closed box full range loudspeakers
- 1 balanced quad driver folded bass horn (2.2 meters long)
- 200W amplifier system
- Individual digital processing for each speaker
- Frequency response 47-18000Hz ±3dB
- Frequency response 38-20000Hz ±10dB
- Max continuous sound pressure 100dB @ 1 m

MX800 Single with dual camera:
- 6 loudspeakers in total
- 5 closed box full range loudspeakers
- 1 balanced quad driver folded bass horn (2 meters long)
- 200W amplifier system
- Individual digital processing for each speaker
- Frequency response 47-18000Hz ±3dB
- Frequency response 47-18000Hz ±3dB
- Frequency response 38-20000Hz ±10dB
- Max continuous sound pressure 100dB @ 1 m

MX800 Dual:
- 13 loudspeakers in total
- 11 closed box full range loudspeakers
- 2 balanced quad driver folded bass horn (2.2 meters long)
- 400W amplifier system
- Individual digital processing for each speaker
- Frequency response 47-18000Hz ±3dB
- Frequency response 47-18000Hz ±3dB
- Frequency response 38-20000Hz ±10dB
- Max continuous sound pressure 100dB @ 1 m

USER INTERFACE

Cisco Touch 10 interface
- 10 inch projected capacitive touch screen
- Resolution: 1280 x 800

LANGUAGE SUPPORT

(depends on software version)
- Arabic, Catalan, Chinese-Simplified, Chinese-Traditional, Czech, Danish, Dutch, English, English-UK, Finnish, French, French-Canadian, German, Hebrew, Hungarian, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Portuguese-Brazilian, Russian, Spanish, Spanish-Latin, Swedish, Turkish

SYSTEM MANAGEMENT

- Support for the Cisco TelePresence Management Suite (TMS)
- Total management via embedded Telnet, SSH, XML and SOAP
- Remote software upload via web server, SCP, HTTP and HTTPS
- One RS-232 for local control and diagnostics
- Support for Cisco Touch 10

DIRECTORY SERVICES

- Support for local directories (Favorites / Local contacts)
- Corporate directory (through CUCM and Cisco TMS)
- Server directory supporting LDAP and H.350 (requires Cisco TMS)
- Call history with received, placed and missed calls with date and time
Technical specification (page 2 of 4)

POWER

MX700:
- Auto-sensing power supply
- 100–240 VAC, 50/60 Hz
- Standby power consumption single camera/dual camera: 129 W/140 W
- Average power consumption single camera/dual camera: 547 W/560 W (under normal operating conditions as defined in IEC 60950–1)
- Maximum power consumption single camera/dual camera: 567 W/580 W

MX800 Single:
- Auto-sensing power supply
- 100–240 VAC, 50/60 Hz
- Standby power consumption single camera/dual camera: 106 W/118 W
- Average power consumption single camera/dual camera: 320 W/333 W (under normal operating conditions as defined in IEC 60950–1)
- Maximum power consumption single camera/dual camera: 330 W/343 W

MX800 Dual:
- Auto-sensing power supply
- 100–240 VAC, 50/60 Hz
- Standby power consumption dual camera: 157 W
- Average power consumption dual camera: 570 W (under normal operating conditions as defined in IEC 60950–1)
- Maximum power consumption dual camera: 590 W

OPERATING TEMPERATURE AND HUMIDITY:
- Ambient temperature: 32°F to 104°F (0°C to 40°C)
- Relative humidity (RH): 10% to 90%

STORAGE AND TRANSPORT TEMPERATURE:
- -4°F to 140°F (-20°C to 60°C) at RH 10% to 90% (non-condensing)

PRODUCT DIMENSIONS AND WEIGHT

MX700, free standing floor stand:
- Height: 64.2 in. (163.1 cm)
- Width: 99.1 in. (251.7 cm)
- Depth: 36.2 in. (92.0 cm) including feet
- Weight, single camera: 339.5 lbs (154 kg)
- Weight, dual camera: 348.3 lbs (158 kg)

MX700, floor stand secured to the wall:
- Height: 64.2 in. (163.1 cm)
- Width: 99.1 in. (251.7 cm)
- Depth: 6.2 in. or 8.5 in. (15.6 cm or 21.5 cm)
- Weight, single camera: 339.5 lbs (154 kg)
- Weight, dual camera: 348.3 lbs (158 kg)

MX700, wall mount:
- Height: 42.2 in. (107.1 cm)
- Width: 99.1 in. (251.7 cm)
- Depth: 5.8 in. (14.8 cm)
- Weight, single camera: 357 lbs (162 kg)
- Weight, dual camera: 366 lbs (166 kg)

MX800 Single, free standing floor stand:
- Height: 71.6 in. (181.8 cm)
- Width: 62.8 in. (159.6 cm)
- Depth: 36.2 in. (92.0 cm) including feet
- Weight, single camera: 249 lbs (113 kg)

MX800 Dual, free standing floor stand:
- Height: 71.6 in. (181.8 cm)
- Width: 124.8 in. (319 cm)
- Depth: 36.2 in. (92.0 cm) including feet
- Weight: 524.7 lbs (238 kg)

MX800 Dual, floor stand secured to the wall:
- Height: 71.6 in. (181.8 cm)
- Width: 124.8 in. (319 cm)
- Depth: 6.2 in. or 8.5 in. (15.6 cm or 21.5 cm)
- Weight: 524.7 lbs (238 kg)

MX800 Dual, wall mount:
- Height: 49.5 in. (125.8 cm)
- Width: 124.8 in. (319 cm)
- Depth: 5.8 in. (14.8 cm)
- Weight: 537 lbs (244 kg)

PACKAGING DIMENSIONS AND WEIGHT

MX700:
- Height: 62.2 in. (158 cm)
- Width: 30.5 in. (77.5 cm)
- Depth: 61.7 in. (156.7 cm)
- Weight, single camera: 498.2 lbs (226 kg)
- Weight, dual camera: 511.5 lbs (232 kg)

MX800 Single:
- Height: 59.1 in. (150 cm)
- Width: 26.4 in. (67 cm)
- Depth: 72.8 in. (185 cm)
- Weight, single camera: 361 lbs (164 kg)
- Weight, dual camera: 374 lbs (170 kg)

MX800 Dual:
- Height: 59.1 in. (150 cm)
- Width: 34.6 in. (88 cm)
- Depth: 72.8 in. (185 cm)
- Weight: 705.5 lbs (320 kg)

APPROVALS AND COMPLIANCE
- Directive 2014/35/EU (Low-Voltage Directive)
- Directive 2014/30/EU (EMC Directive) – Class A
- Directive 2011/65/EU (RoHS)
- Directive 2002/96/EC (WEEE)
- NRTL approved (Product Safety)
- FCC CFR 47 Part 15B (EMC) – Class A

Please check the Product Approval Status Database at http://www.ciscocfx.com for approval documents per country.
Technical specification (page 3 of 4)

PRODUCT CAPABILITIES

PRODUCT DELIVERED COMPLETE WITH:
- One mounting option, single or dual camera option, Cisco Touch 10, codec, complete audio system, 2 * Cisco Microphone 60, two presentation cables.

BANDWIDTH
- H.323 and SIP up to 6 Mbps point-to-point
- Up to 6 Mbps total MultiSite bandwidth

MINIMUM BANDWIDTH FOR RESOLUTION / FRAME RATE (H.264)
- 720p30 from 768kps
- 720p60 from 1152kps
- 1080p30 from 1472kbs
- 1080p60 from 2560kbps

FIREWALL TRAVERSAL
- Cisco TelePresence Expressway technology
- H.460.18 and H.460.19 firewall traversal
- SIP ICE (Interactive Connectivity Establishment)

VIDEO STANDARDS
- H.261, H.263, H.263+, H.264
- H.265 (SIP)

VIDEO FEATURES
- Advanced screen layouts
- Local auto layout

VIDEO INPUTS (FIVE INPUTS)
Extended Display Identification Data (EDID)
HDCP is not supported

Three HDMI inputs: support formats up to maximum 1920 * 1080@60fps, including:
- 1920 * 1080@60 (720p60)
- 1920 * 1080@50 (720p50)
- 1920 * 1080@30 (720p30)
- 1920 * 1080@25 (720p25)
- 1280 * 720@60 (1080p60)
- 1280 * 720@50 (720p50)
- 720 * 480@60, and 59.94Hz (480p60)
- 640 * 480@60Hz (480p60)
- 1280 * 1024@60, and 75Hz (SXGA)
- 1024 * 768@90, 70, 75, and 85Hz (XGA)
- 800 * 600@56, 60, 72, 75, and 85Hz (SVGA)
- 1920 * 1200@50 and 60Hz (WUXGA+)
- 1680 * 1050@60Hz (WXGA+)
- 1440 * 900@60Hz (WXGA+)
- 1280 * 768@60Hz (WXGA)

One Composite/S-Video Input (BNC Connectors)
- PAL/NTSC
- Systems with single camera: HDMI input 1 is used for the camera
- Systems with dual camera: HDMI inputs 1 and 2 are used for the cameras

VIDEO OUTPUTS (THREE OUTPUTS)
Two HDMI outputs and one DVI-I output; supports formats up to maximum 1920 * 1080@60fps (1080p60), including:
- 1920 * 1080@60Hz (1080p60)
- 1920 * 1080@50Hz (1080p50)
- 1280 * 720@60Hz (720p60)
- 1280 * 720@50Hz (720p50)

MX700 and MX800 Dual: HDMI outputs 1 and 2 are used for the two integrated screens
MX800 Single: HDMI output 1 is used for the integrated screen

VESA Monitor Power Management
Extended Display Identification Data (EDID)

_ENCODE/DECODE VIDEO FORMATS_
Supports encode/decode video formats up to maximum 1920 * 1080@60fps (HD1080p60), including:
- 176 * 144@30 frames per second (fps) (QCIF)
- 352 * 288@30 (CIF)
- 512 * 288@30fps (w288p)
- 576 * 448@30fps (448p)
- 768 * 448@30fps (w448p)
- 704 * 576@30fps (4CF)
- 1024 * 576@30fps (w576p)
- 1280 * 720@30fps (VGA)
- 1920 * 1080@30fps (1080p30)
- 1280 * 768@60fps (720p4c)
- 1280 * 768@50Hz (720p6c)
- 720 * 480@60Hz (480p6c)
- 640 * 480@60Hz (480p6c)
- 1280 * 1024@60, 75Hz (SXGA+)
- 1024 * 768@90, 70, 75, and 85Hz (XGA+)
- 800 * 600@60, 60, 72, 75, and 85Hz (SVGA+)
- 1680 * 1050@60Hz (WXGA+)
- 1440 * 900@60Hz (WXGA+)
- 1280 * 768@60Hz (WXGA)
- 1280 × 768@30fps (WXGA+)
- 1440 × 900@30fps (WXGA+)
- 1680 × 1050@30fps (WXGA+)
- 512 × 288@60fps (w288p)
- 768 × 448@60fps (w448p)
- 1024 × 576@60fps (w576p)
- 1280 × 720@60fps (720p60)
- 1280 × 1080@60fps (1080p60)

AUDIO STANDARDS
- 64kbps and 128kbps AAC-LD, G.722, G.722.1, G.711, G.729AB

AUDIO FEATURES
- High quality 20kHz audio
- Eight separate acoustic echo cancellers
- Eight-port audio mixer
- Automatic gain control (AGC)
- Automatic noise reduction
- Active lip synchronization

AUDIO INPUTS (FIFTEEN INPUTS)
- Eight microphones, 48V phantom powered, Euroblock connector, each with separate echo cancellers and noise reduction; all microphones can be set for balanced line level
- Four balanced line level inputs, Euroblock connector
- Three HDMI inputs, digital, stereo (from PC/DVD)

AUDIO OUTPUTS (EIGHT OUTPUTS)
- Six balanced line level outputs, Euroblock connector
- Two HDMI outputs (MX700 and MX800 Dual: Both HDMI audio outputs are used for the two integrated screens. MX800 Single: One HDMI audio output is used for the integrated screen)

DUAL STREAM
- H.264 dual stream (H.323)
- BFCP dual stream (SIP)
- Support for resolutions up to 1920 * 1200 at 30 fps, independent of main stream resolution

* HDMI version 1.4
MULTIPOINT SUPPORT

- Five-way embedded SIP/H.323 MultiPoint, ref. MultiSite
- Cisco Ad-Hoc Conferencing (requires Cisco Unified Communications Manager (UCM), and Cisco Meeting Server (CMS) or Cisco TelePresence Server with Cisco TelePresence Conductor)
- Cisco Conferencing Active Control

MULTISITE FEATURES

- Five-way 720p30, three-way and four-way 1080p30
- Full individual audio and video transcoding
- Individual layouts in MultiSite continuous presence
- H.323/SIP/VoIP in the same conference
- Support for Presentation (H.239/BFCP) from any participant at resolutions up to 1080p15
- H.264, encryption and dual stream from any site
- IP downspeeding
- Dial in and dial out
- Conference rates up to 10Mbps

PROTOCOLS

- H.323 and SIP (dual call stack support)
- ISDN (requires Cisco TelePresence ISDN Link)

EMBEDDED ENCRYPTION

- H.323 and SIP point-to-point and MultiSite
- Standards-based: H.235 v3 and Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)
- Automatic key generation and exchange
- Supported in dual stream

IP NETWORK FEATURES

- DNS lookup for service configuration
- Differentiated services (QoS)
- IP adaptive bandwidth management (including flow control)
- Auto gatekeeper discovery
- Dynamic playout and lip-sync buffering
- H.245 DTMF tones in H.323
- RFC 4733 DTMF tones in SIP
- Date and time support via NTP
- Packet loss based downspeeding
- URI dialing
- TCP/IP
- DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol)
- IEEE 802.1x network authentication
- IEEE 802.1q VLAN
- IEEE 802.1p QoS and class of service
- ClearPath

IPv6 NETWORK SUPPORT

- Dual-stack IPv4 and IPv6 for DHCP, SSH, HTTP, HTTPS, DNS and DiffServ
- Support for static IP address assignment, stateless autoconfiguration and DHCPv6

CISCO UNIFIED COMMUNICATIONS MANAGER

(Requires Cisco UCM version 8.6 or later)

- Native registration with Cisco Unified Communications Manager (UCM)
- Basic UCM provisioning
- Firmware upgrade from UCM
- Cisco Discovery Protocol and DHCP option 150 support
- Basic telephony features such as hold, resume, transfer, and corporate directory lookup

SECURITY FEATURES

- Management using HTTPS and SSH
- IP administration password
- Administration menu password
- Disable IP services
- Network settings protection

NETWORK INTERFACES

- One LAN/Ethernet (RJ-45) 10/100/1000 Mbps
- Two LAN/Ethernet (RJ-45) interfaces to be used for Cisco TelePresence peripherals

OTHER INTERFACES

- Two USB host (one is in use; one is for future use)
- GPIO

All specifications are subject to change without notice, system specifics may vary.
All images in these materials are for representational purposes only, actual products may differ.
Cisco and the Cisco Logo are trademarks of Cisco Systems, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. A listing of Cisco’s trademarks can be found at www.cisco.com/go/trademarks. Third party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company.
April 2018
Supported RFCs

The RFC (Request for Comments) series contains technical and organizational documents about the Internet, including the technical specifications and policy documents produced by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF).

CE software supports a range of RFCs, including the following:

- RFC 2782 DNS RR for specifying the location of services (DNS SRV)
- RFC 3261 SIP: Session Initiation Protocol
- RFC 3263 Locating SIP Servers
- RFC 3361 DHCP Option for SIP Servers
- RFC 3550 RTP: A Transport Protocol for Real-Time Applications
- RFC 3711 The Secure Real-time Transport Protocol (SRTP)
- RFC 4091 The Alternative Network Address Types (ANAT) Semantics for the Session Description Protocol (SDP) Grouping Framework
- RFC 4092 Usage of the Session Description Protocol (SDP) Alternative Network Address Types (ANAT) Semantics in the Session Initiation Protocol (SIP)
- RFC 4582 The Binary Floor Control Protocol
draft-ietf-bfcpbis-rfc4582bis-00 Revision of the Binary Floor Control Protocol (BFCP) for use over an unreliable transport
- RFC 4733 RTP Payload for DTMF Digits, Telephony Tones and Telephony Signals
- RFC 5245 Interactive Connectivity Establishment (ICE): A Protocol for Network Address Translator (NAT) Traversal for Offer/Answer Protocols
- RFC 5589: SIP Call Control Transfer
- RFC 5766 Traversal Using Relays around NAT (TURN): Relay Extensions to Session Traversal Utilities for NAT (STUN)
User documentation on the Cisco web site

Use the following short-links to find the documentation for the product series running CE software.

Room Series:
► https://www.cisco.com/go/roomkit-docs

MX Series:
► https://www.cisco.com/go/mx-docs

SX Series:
► https://www.cisco.com/go/sx-docs

DX Series:
► https://www.cisco.com/go/dx-docs

In general, you can find user documentation for all Cisco Collaboration endpoints at ► https://www.cisco.com/go/telepresence/docs

The documents are organized in the following categories - some documents are not available for all products:

Install and Upgrade > Install and Upgrade Guides
• Installation guides: How to install the product
• Getting started guide: Initial configurations required to get the system up and running
• RCSI guide: Regulatory compliance and safety information

Maintain and Operate > Maintain and Operate Guides
• Getting started guide: Initial configurations required to get the system up and running
• Administrator guide: Information required to administer your product
• Deployment guide for TelePresence endpoints on CUCM: Tasks to perform to start using the video system with the Cisco Unified Communications Manager (CUCM)
• Spare parts overview, Spare parts replacement guides, Cable schemas: Useful information when replacing spare parts

Maintain and Operate > End-User Guides
• User guides: How to use the product
• Quick reference guides: How to use the product
• Physical interface guide: Details about the codec’s physical interface, including the connector panel and LEDs

Reference Guides > Command references
• API reference guides: Reference guide for the Application Programmer Interface (API)

Reference Guides > Technical References
• CAD drawings: 2D CAD drawings with measurements

Configure > Configuration Guides
• CE Customization guide: How to customize the user interface, how to use the video system’s API to program in-room controls, making macros, use a video switch, and configure advanced audio set-ups using the Audio Console.

Design > Design Guides
• Video conferencing room guidelines: General guidelines for room design and best practice
• Video conferencing room guidelines: Things to do to improve the perceived audio quality

Software Downloads, Release and General Information > Licensing Information
• Open source documentation: Licenses and notices for open source software used in this product

Software Downloads, Release and General Information > Release Notes
• Software release notes
Cisco contacts

On our website you will find an overview of the worldwide Cisco contacts.

Go to: https://www.cisco.com/go/offices

Corporate Headquarters
Cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Dr.
San Jose, CA 95134 USA